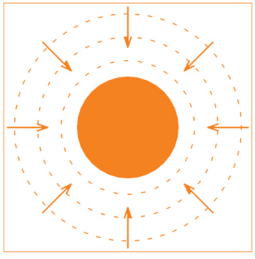
second edition

lectures on quantum mechanics

perturbed evolution



berthold-georg englert

lectures on
quantum mechanics

perturbed evolution

second edition

Other Lecture Notes by the Author

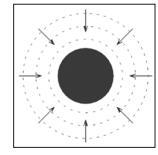
Lectures on Classical Electrodynamics
ISBN: 978-981-4596-92-3
ISBN: 978-981-4596-93-0 (pbk)

Lectures on Classical Mechanics
ISBN: 978-981-4678-44-5
ISBN: 978-981-4678-45-2 (pbk)

Lectures on Statistical Mechanics
ISBN: 978-981-12-2457-7
ISBN: 978-981-122-554-3 (pbk)

lectures on quantum mechanics

perturbed evolution



second edition

Berthold-Georg Englert
Beijing Institute of Technology, China
National University of Singapore, Singapore

World Scientific

NEW JERSEY • LONDON • SINGAPORE • BEIJING • SHANGHAI • HONG KONG • TAIPEI • CHENNAI • TOKYO

Published by

World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd.

5 Toh Tuck Link, Singapore 596224

USA office: 27 Warren Street, Suite 401-402, Hackensack, NJ 07601

UK office: 57 Shelton Street, Covent Garden, London WC2H 9HE

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Englert, Berthold-Georg, 1953– author.
Title: Lectures on quantum mechanics / Berthold-Georg Englert.
Description: Second edition, corrected and enlarged. | Hackensack : World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd., 2024. | Includes bibliographical references and index. |
Contents: Basic matters -- Simple systems -- Perturbed evolution.
Identifiers: LCCN 2023040959 (print) | LCCN 2023040960 (ebook) |
ISBN 9789811284724 (v. 1 ; hardcover) | ISBN 9789811284984 (v. 1 ; paperback) |
ISBN 9789811284755 (v. 2 ; hardcover) | ISBN 9789811284991 (v. 2 ; paperback) |
ISBN 9789811284786 (v. 3 ; hardcover) | ISBN 9789811285004 (v. 3 ; paperback) |
ISBN 9789811284731 (v. 1 ; ebook) | ISBN 9789811284762 (v. 2 ; ebook) |
ISBN 9789811284793 (v. 3 ; ebook)
Subjects: LCSH: Quantum theory. | Physics.
Classification: LCC QC174.125 .E54 2023 (print) | LCC QC174.125 (ebook) |
DDC 530.12--dc23/eng/20231011
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2023040959
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2023040960

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Copyright © 2024 by World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd.

All rights reserved. This book, or parts thereof, may not be reproduced in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or any information storage and retrieval system now known or to be invented, without written permission from the publisher.

For photocopying of material in this volume, please pay a copying fee through the Copyright Clearance Center, Inc., 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, USA. In this case permission to photocopy is not required from the publisher.

For any available supplementary material, please visit
https://www.worldscientific.com/worldscibooks/10.1142/13636#t=suppl

Printed in Singapore

To my teachers, colleagues, and students

This page intentionally left blank

Preface

This book on the *Perturbed Evolution* of quantum systems grew out of a set of lecture notes for a fourth-year undergraduate course at the National University of Singapore (NUS). The reader is expected to be familiar with the subject matter of a solid introduction to quantum mechanics, such as Dirac's formalism of kets and bras, Schrödinger's and Heisenberg's equations of motion, and the standard examples that can be treated exactly, with harmonic oscillators and hydrogen-like atoms among them.

After brief reviews of quantum kinematics and dynamics, including discussions of Bohr's principle of complementarity and Schwinger's quantum action principle, the attention turns to the elements of time-dependent perturbation theory and then to the scattering by localized interactions. Fermi's golden rule, the Born series, and the Lippmann–Schwinger equation are returning themes.

A chapter on general angular momentum prepares the ground for a discussion of indistinguishable particles. The scattering of two particles of the same kind, the basic properties of two-electron atoms, and a glimpse at many-electron atoms illustrate the matter. Throughout the text, the learning student will benefit from the dozens of exercises on the way and the detailed exposition that does not skip intermediate steps.

Two companion books on *Basic Matters* and *Simple Systems* cover the material of the preceding courses at NUS for second- and third-year students, respectively. The three books are, however, not strictly sequential but rather independent of each other and largely self-contained. In fact, there is quite some overlap and a considerable amount of repeated material. While the repetitions send a useful message to the self-studying reader about what is more important and what is less, one could do without them and teach most of *Basic Matters*, *Simple Systems*, and *Perturbed Evolution* in a coherent two-semester course on quantum mechanics.

All three books owe their existence to the outstanding teachers, colleagues, and students from whom I learned so much. I dedicate these lectures to them.

I am grateful for the encouragement of Professors Choo Hiap Oh and Kok Khoo Phua who initiated this project. The professional help by the staff of World Scientific Publishing Co. was crucial for the completion; I acknowledge the invaluable support of Miss Ying Oi Chiew and Miss Lai Fun Kwong with particular gratitude. But nothing would have come about, were it not for the initiative and devotion of Miss Jia Li Goh who turned the original handwritten notes into electronic files that I could then edit.

I wish to thank my dear wife Ola for her continuing understanding and patience by which she is giving me the peace of mind that is the source of all achievements.

Singapore, March 2006 *BG Englert*

Note on the second edition

The feedback received from students and colleagues, together with my own critical take on the three companion books on quantum mechanics, suggested rather strongly that the books would benefit from a revision. This task has now been completed.

Many readers have contributed entries to the list of errata. I wish to thank all contributors sincerely and extend special thanks to Miss Hong Zhenxi and Professor Lim Hock.

In addition to correcting the errors, I tied up some loose ends and brought the three books in line with the later volumes in the "Lectures on ..." series. There is now a glossary, and the exercises, which were interspersed throughout the text, are collected after the main chapters and supplemented by hints.

The team led by Miss Nur Syarfeena Binte Mohd Fauzi at World Scientific Publishing Co. contributed greatly to getting the three books into shape. I thank them very much for their efforts.

Beijing and Singapore, November 2023 *BG Englert*

Contents

Preface **vii**

Glossary **xiii**
Miscellanea xiii
Latin alphabet xiv
Greek alphabet and Greek-Latin combinations xvi

1. Basics of Kinematics and Dynamics **1**
1.1 Brief review of basic kinematics 1
1.2 Bohr's principle of complementarity 7
1.2.1 Complementary observables 7
1.2.2 Algebraic completeness 12
1.2.3 Bohr's principle. Technical formulation 14
1.2.4 Composite degrees of freedom 15
1.2.5 The limit $N \to \infty$. Symmetric case 17
1.2.6 The limit $N \to \infty$. Asymmetric case 22
1.2.7 Bohr's principle. Quantum indeterminism 26
1.3 Brief review of basic dynamics 27
1.3.1 Equations of motion 27
1.3.2 Time transformation functions 29
1.4 Schwinger's quantum action principle 32
1.4.1 An example: Constant force 35
1.4.2 Insertion: Varying an exponential function 36
1.4.3 Time-independent Hamilton operator 38

2. Time-Dependent Perturbations **41**
2.1 Born series 41
2.2 Scattering operator 43

2.3 Dyson series 46
2.4 Fermi's golden rule 47
2.5 Photon emission by a "two-level atom" 52
2.5.1 Golden-rule treatment 52
2.5.2 A more detailed treatment 54
2.5.3 An exact treatment 60
2.6 Driven two-level atom 62
2.6.1 Schrödinger equation 62
2.6.2 Resonant drive 65
2.6.3 Periodic drive 66
2.6.4 Very slow drive: Adiabatic evolution 68
2.7 Adiabatic population transfer 71
2.8 Equation of motion for the unitary evolution operator . . 74

3. Scattering **79**
3.1 Probability density, probability current density 79
3.2 One-dimensional prelude: Forces scatter 82
3.3 Scattering by a localized potential 86
3.3.1 Golden-rule approximation 86
3.3.2 Example: Yukawa potential 90
3.3.3 Rutherford cross section as a limit 91
3.4 Lippmann–Schwinger equation 92
3.4.1 Born approximation 100
3.4.2 Transition operator 100
3.4.3 Optical theorem 102
3.4.4 Example of an exact solution 104
3.5 Partial waves 105
3.6 s-wave scattering 110

4. Angular Momentum **115**
4.1 Spin 115
4.2 Addition of two angular momenta 119
4.2.1 General case 119
4.2.2 Two spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ systems 122
4.2.3 Total angular momentum of an electron 123

5. External Magnetic Field **125**
5.1 Electric charge in a magnetic field 125
5.2 Electron in a homogeneous magnetic field 132

6. Indistinguishable Particles **139**
6.1 Indistinguishability 139
6.2 Bosons and fermions 141
6.3 Scattering of two indistinguishable particles 144
6.4 Two-electron atoms 148
6.4.1 Variational estimate for the ground state 148
6.4.2 Perturbative estimate for the first excited states . . 155
6.4.3 Self-consistent single-electron wave functions 156
6.5 A glimpse at many-electron atoms 159

Exercises with Hints **165**
Exercises for Chapters 1–6 165
Hints 180

Index **187**

This page intentionally left blank

Glossary

Here is a list of the symbols used in the text; the numbers in square brackets indicate the pages of first occurrence or of other significance.

Miscellanea

0	null symbol: number 0, or null column, or null matrix, or null ket, or null bra, or null operator, *et cetera*
1	unit symbol: number 1, or unit matrix, or identity operator, *et cetera*
$A \mathrel{\widehat{=}} B$	read "A represents B" or "A is represented by B"
$\mathrm{Max}\{\ \}, \mathrm{Min}\{\ \}$	maximum, minimum of a set of real numbers
$a^*,\ \lvert a\rvert$	complex conjugate of a, absolute value of a
$\mathrm{Re}(a), \mathrm{Im}(a)$	real, imaginary part of a
$a = \lvert \boldsymbol{a} \rvert$	length of vector $\boldsymbol{a}$
$\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{b}, \boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b}$	scalar, vector product of vectors $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$
$A^\dagger$	adjoint of A [3]
$\det(A), \mathrm{tr}(A)$	determinant [144], trace of A [14]
$\lvert\ \rangle, \langle\ \rvert; \lvert 1\rangle, \langle a\rvert$	generic ket, bra; labeled ket, bra [1]
$\lvert\mathrm{init}\rangle,\ \langle\mathrm{fin}\rvert$	initial ket, final bra [63]
$\lvert\mathrm{in}\rangle,\ \lvert\mathrm{out}\rangle$	kets for incoming, outgoing particles [92]
$\lvert j_1, j_2; j, m\rangle,\ \lvert (j_1, m_1)(j_2, m_2)\rangle$	kets for composite angular momentum [120]
$\langle\ \rvert\ \rangle, \lvert\ \rangle\langle\ \rvert$	bra-ket, ket-bra [2,3]
$\lvert \ldots, t\rangle,\ \langle \ldots, t\rvert$	ket, bra at time t [27]
$\langle \ldots, t_1 \rvert \ldots, t_2\rangle$	time transformation function [29]
$\langle A\rangle$	mean value, expectation value of A
$[A, B]$	commutator of A and B [19]
$\big[A(t)A(t')\big]_>$	time-ordered product [46]
$\uparrow, \downarrow$	spin-up, spin-down [122]
$x!$	factorial of x [152]
$f^2(x),\ f^{-1}(x)$	square, inverse of the function $x \mapsto f(x)$: $f^2(x) = f\big(f(x)\big),\ f\big(f^{-1}(x)\big) = x,\ f^{-1}\big(f(x)\big) = x$

$f(x)^2$, $f(x)^{-1}$	square, reciprocal of the function value: $f(x)^2 = \big(f(x)\big)^2$, $f(x)^{-1} = 1/f(x)$
$f(A;B)$	ordered function of operators A, B [13]
$\mathrm{d}t$, δt	differential, variation of t
$\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}$, $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}$	total, parametric time derivative
$\boldsymbol{\nabla}$	gradient vector differential operator
$(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})$, $\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}$; $\mathrm{d}\Omega$	volume element for $\boldsymbol{r}$, vectorial surface element [79]; solid-angle element [86]
$\otimes$	tensor product: $\lvert a\rangle \otimes \lvert b\rangle = \lvert a, b\rangle$

Latin alphabet

a	range of the hard-sphere potential [110]
a_0	Bohr radius, $a_0 = 0.529\,\text{Å}$ [151]
$a(t)$, $b(t)$	probability amplitudes [70]
$a(s)$	Laplace transform of $\alpha(t)$ [60]
A, a_j	generic operator, its jth eigenvalue [1]
$A(t)$	collection of dynamical variables [27]
$A_\pm$, $A_\pm^\dagger$	harmonic-oscillator ladder operators [129]
$\boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{r})$, $\boldsymbol{B}(\boldsymbol{r})$	vector potential, magnetic field at $\boldsymbol{r}$ [125]
Å	angstrom unit, $1\text{Å} = 10^{-10}\,\mathrm{m} = 0.1\,\mathrm{nm}$ [151]
c	speed of light, $c = 2.99792 \times 10^8\,\mathrm{cm\,s^{-1}}$ [125]
$\cos, \sin, \ldots$	trigonometric functions
$\cosh, \sinh, \ldots$	hyperbolic functions
e	elementary charge, $e = 4.80320 \times 10^{-10}\,\mathrm{Fr}$ [91]
e; $\mathrm{e}^x = \exp(x)$	Euler's number, $\mathrm{e} = 2.71828\ldots$; exponential function
E, E_n, $\mathcal{E}$	energy, nth eigenenergy [48], Lagrange parameter [157]
$f(u_k, v_l)$	normalized mixed matrix element [12]
$f\big(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}\big)$	scattering amplitude [98]
F, $F(x)$	force [35,85]
G, G_1, G_2	generators [32]
$G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{r}')$, G	Green's functions [94], Green's operator [101]
$h = 2\pi\hbar$	Planck's constant, $\hbar = 1.05457 \times 10^{-34}\,\mathrm{J\,s} = 0.658212\,\mathrm{eV\,fs}$ [19]
H, H_t, $\mathcal{H}$	Hamilton operator [27], at time t [29], matrix for H [68]
H_0, H_1; $\overline{H_1}$	dominant, small part of H [41]; interaction picture [45]
H_{atom}, H_{phot},	atom, photon part of H [53]
H_{int}; H_{rot}	interaction part of H [53]; H for rotation [115]

$H_\perp$, $H_\parallel$	perpendicular, parallel part of H [127]
$H(1,2)$	two-particle Hamilton operator [139]
H_{CM}, H_{rel}	center-of-mass, relative-motion parts of H [140]
H_{kin}, H_{Ne}, H_{ee}	parts of H for many-electron atoms [149]
i	imaginary unit, $\mathrm{i}^2 = -1$
$\mathrm{j}_l(\ )$	lth spherical Bessel function [107]
$\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)$, $\boldsymbol{j}_{\mathrm{scat}}(\boldsymbol{r})$	probability current density [79], scattered current [97]
$\boldsymbol{J}$, $J_\pm$	total angular momentum vector, ladder operators [117]
$\boldsymbol{k}$; k, $k(x)$	wave vector [86]; wave number, with x dependence [83]
L, $\boldsymbol{L}$	angular momentum operator (one axis) [24], orbital angular momentum vector operator [105]
l, m; j, m	angular momentum quantum numbers [106,117]
mod	modulo (modular arithmetic) [23]
M	mass [30]
N	period of the basic unitary operators [7]
$O\big(\epsilon\big)$	terms of oder ϵ or smaller [96]
prob(E)	probability for event E [2]
P	momentum operator for the x direction [19]
$\boldsymbol{p}$, $\boldsymbol{P}$, $\boldsymbol{P}_j$	momentum vector, operator, for the jth particle [80]
$\mathrm{P}_l(\ )$	lth Legendre polynomial [107]
$\mathcal{P}$	principal value [58]
q	change in the wave vector [89]; charge [125]
r_j	jth eigenvalue of the statistical operator [26]
$\boldsymbol{r}$, $\boldsymbol{R}$, $\boldsymbol{R}_j$	position vector, operator, for the jth particle [79]
Ry	Rydberg unit of energy, $1\,\mathrm{Ry} = 13.6\,\mathrm{eV}$ [150]
s	length of difference vector [94], spin value [142]
$S(T)$, $S_n(T)$	scattering operator [44], its nth approximation [46]
$\mathcal{S}$; $\boldsymbol{S}$	scattering matrix [86]; spin vector operator [115]
s, p, d, f	spectroscopic state labels [123]
t; t_1, t_2	time [27]; final, initial time [32]
T	duration [30]; transition operator [100]
U, V; u_k, v_k	basic unitary operators; their kth eigenvalues [8]
$U(T)$, $U_0(T)$	unitary evolution operators [44]
$U\big(A(t);t_0,t\big)$	unitary evolution operator [74]
$V(\boldsymbol{r})$, $V(x)$, V_0	potential energy [80,82,110]
V_{LS}	strength of spin-orbit coupling [137]
$\boldsymbol{V}$	velocity vector operator [125]
W_{12}	action operator [33]
x, y, z	cartesian coordinates, components of $\boldsymbol{r}$

X	position operator for the x direction [19]
$\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\vartheta, \varphi)$	spherical harmonics [106]
Z_0, $Z_\pm$	components of $\boldsymbol{S}$ [134]
Z, Z_{eff}	atomic number [91], effective value [151]

Greek alphabet and Greek-Latin combinations

$\alpha(t)$, $\beta_\nu(t)$	time dependent probability amplitudes [55]
γ, $\gamma_{m \leftarrow n}$	transition rate [49], from the nth to the mth state [51]
Γ	complex decay rate [56]
δ_{jk}, $\delta(x, y)$	Kronecker's delta symbol [3,13]
δ, δa, δ_a	variation [29], of variable a, with respect to a
δ_l	lth scattering phase [108]
$\delta(x - x')$	Dirac's delta function [20]
Δ; Δp	detuning [66]; finite difference (of variable p) [21]
ϵ	small increment
θ	scattering angle [90]
κ	wave number (integration variable) [94]
λ	formal expansion parameter [41]
μ_{B}; $\boldsymbol{\mu}$	Bohr magneton; magnetic dipole moment vector [132]
A_ν, $A_\nu^\dagger$; a'_ν, a^*_ν	ladder operators for photons of the νth kind [52]; their amplitudes [63]
π	Archimedes's constant, $\pi = 3.14159\ldots$
ρ, $\rho(\boldsymbol{r}, t)$	statistical operator [26], probability density [79]
$\rho(E)$	density of states [52]
σ, $\sigma^\dagger$	atomic ladder operators [52]
$\boldsymbol{\sigma}$; $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$;	Pauli vector operator; cartesian components [115]
$\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\omega}$, σ	differential cross section [88], total cross section [104]
τ; $t(\tau)$, $X(\tau)$	path parameter; path variables [33]
ϕ, φ	azimuth [23], azimuthal shift [24]
$\phi(k, x)$, $\phi_\pm(k, x)$	wave-number amplitudes in $\psi(x, t)$ [83,84]
φ, ϑ	angular parameters [68], azimuth, polar angle [106]
$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}, t)$	position wave function at time t [79]
$\psi_{\pm,\mathrm{scat}}(\boldsymbol{r})$	scattered wave function [97]
ω, $\Delta\omega$	transition frequency [49], frequency shift [58]
$\overline{\omega}$	effective transition frequency [68]
$f(\omega)$	state-density averaged squared Rabi frequencies [54]
$\boldsymbol{\omega}$, ω_{cycl}	angular velocity vector [115], cyclotron frequency [128]
Ω_ν, Ω_0, $\overline{\Omega}$	νth [53], reduced [65], modified Rabi frequency [67]
$\Omega_1(t)$, $\Omega_2(t)$	time-dependent Rabi frequencies [71]

Chapter 1

Basics of Kinematics and Dynamics

1.1 Brief review of basic kinematics

In quantum mechanics, the physical quantities are symbolized by linear operators A, B, ... that act on vectors — elements of a vector space, that is, not physical vectors in the three-dimensional space of our experience. We often speak of *observables* when referring to these linear operators, which is a sloppy use of terminology because, more precisely, the operators are the mathematical symbols that represent the physical "observable" properties or simply "observables." The vectors they act on come in two kinds: ket vectors $|\ldots\rangle$ and bra vectors $\langle\ldots|$ (or right vectors and left vectors). The mathematical operation of hermitian conjugation, or as the physicists say, "taking the adjoint," relates them to each other,

$$\big\langle\ldots\big|^\dagger = \big|\ldots\big\rangle\,, \quad \big|\ldots\big\rangle^\dagger = \big\langle\ldots\big|\,, \tag{1.1.1}$$

where it is understood that the ellipses indicate identical sets of quantum numbers, which serve as the labels that identify the kets and bras. We write $|\ \rangle$ and $\langle\ |$ for the generic, unlabeled ket and bra.

A measurement of an observable A yields one of the possible measurement results $a_1, a_2, a_3, \ldots$, which are complex numbers in general. If it is known that a measurement of A will surely return the value a_j, then we say that the quantum mechanical system is in the state $|a_j\rangle$,

$$\big|a_j\big\rangle: \quad A\big|a_j\big\rangle = \big|a_j\big\rangle a_j\,, \tag{1.1.2}$$

which — mathematically speaking — is an eigenvector equation, here: an eigenket equation. Here, we choose to label the eigenkets by their eigenvalues; this is not necessary and not always convenient and other labeling

conventions are possible. There is also the corresponding eigenbra equation,

$$\langle a_j|A = a_j\langle a_j|\,. \tag{1.1.3}$$

The measurement result a_j is the eigenvalue of A in both the eigenket equation (1.1.2) and the eigenbra equation (1.1.3).

Under these circumstances, namely the system is in the state described by the ket $|a_j\rangle$, the probability of finding the value b_k upon measuring observable B is

$$\text{prob}(b_k \leftarrow a_j) = \Big|\langle b_k|a_j\rangle\Big|^2\,. \tag{1.1.4}$$

The complex number $\langle b_k|a_j\rangle$ is the *probability amplitude* for the measurement result b_k in state $|a_j\rangle$; its absolute square is the associated probability. This amplitude has all properties that are required of an inner product, in particular

$$\begin{aligned} |a\rangle = |a'\rangle + |a''\rangle: &\qquad \langle b|a\rangle = \langle b|a'\rangle + \langle b|a''\rangle\,,\\ |a\rangle = |\alpha\rangle\lambda: &\qquad \langle b|a\rangle = \langle b|\alpha\rangle\lambda\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.1.5}$$

where λ is any complex number and

$$\begin{aligned} &\langle a|b\rangle = \langle b|a\rangle^*\,,\\ &\langle a|a\rangle \geq 0 \quad \text{with "=" only if } |a\rangle = 0\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.1.6}$$

In mathematical terms, these properties characterize the kets as elements of an inner-product space or *Hilbert* space*. There is a Hilbert space for the bras as well, related to that of the kets by hermitian conjugation.

The mathematical property $\langle a|b\rangle = \langle b|a\rangle^*$ has the very important physical implication that the two probabilities $\text{prob}(b \leftarrow a)$ and $\text{prob}(a \leftarrow b)$ are equal,

$$\text{prob}(b_k \leftarrow a_j) = \text{prob}(a_j \leftarrow b_k)\,. \tag{1.1.7}$$

The probabilities for these related, yet different, physical processes,

on the left: the probability of finding b_k if a_j is the case,

on the right: the probability of finding a_j if b_k is the case,

are therefore always equal. There is, of course, a lot of circumstantial evidence for the validity of this fundamental symmetry, but — elementary situations aside — there does not seem to be a systematic direct experimental test.

---

*David HILBERT (1862–1943)

Different measurement results for the same quantity A exclude each other. This physical fact is expressed by the mathematical statement of orthogonality,

$$\langle a_j | a_k \rangle = 0 \quad \text{if} \quad a_j \neq a_k \quad \text{or} \quad j \neq k\,. \tag{1.1.8}$$

Inasmuch as $\text{prob}(a_j \leftarrow a_j)$ is the probability that a control measurement confirms what is known, we must have

$$\text{prob}(a_j \leftarrow a_j) = 1 \tag{1.1.9}$$

so that $\langle a_j | a_j \rangle = 1$ must hold. Thus,

$$\langle a_j | a_k \rangle = \left\{ \begin{matrix} 0 & \text{if} & j \neq k \\ 1 & \text{if} & j = k \end{matrix} \right\} = \delta_{jk}\,, \tag{1.1.10}$$

where we employ Kronecker's* delta symbol for a compact presentation of this statement of orthonormality.

Each measurement has a result. This physical fact has a mathematical analog as well, the completeness relation

$$\sum_j |a_j\rangle\langle a_j| = 1 \quad (= \text{identity operator}) \tag{1.1.11}$$

so that the kets $|a_j\rangle$ make up a basis for the ket space and the bras $\langle a_j|$ compose a basis for the bra space. As an immediate consequence, we note that the eigenket equation

$$A|a_j\rangle = |a_j\rangle a_j\,, \tag{1.1.12}$$

multiplied by $\langle a_j|$ on the right and then summed over j, yields

$$A = \sum_j |a_j\rangle a_j \langle a_j|\,, \tag{1.1.13}$$

the so-called spectral decomposition of A. We get the spectral decomposition of $A^\dagger$,

$$A^\dagger = \sum_j |a_j\rangle a_j^* \langle a_j|\,, \tag{1.1.14}$$

by making use of the familiar product rule for the adjoint,

$$\Big(|1\rangle\lambda\langle 2|\Big)^\dagger = |2\rangle\lambda^*\langle 1| \tag{1.1.15}$$

for any ket-bra $|1\rangle\langle 2|$ and complex number λ.

*Leopold Kronecker (1823–1891)

An apparatus that measures the physical property A, in fact measures all functions of A,

$$f(A)\big|a_j\big\rangle = \big|a_j\big\rangle f(a_j)\,, \tag{1.1.16}$$

because you just evaluate the function $f(a_j)$ after finding the jth outcome. Put differently, it is our choice whether we want to call the result a_j or $f(a_j)$ when the jth outcome is found. It follows that the spectral decomposition of $f(A)$ is given by

$$f(A) = \sum_j \big|a_j\big\rangle f(a_j)\big\langle a_j\big|\,. \tag{1.1.17}$$

It makes consistent sense to regard $f(A)$ thus defined as an operator-valued function of operator A. For example, consider the simple function A^2,

$$\begin{aligned} f(A) = A^2 &= \left(\sum_j \big|a_j\big\rangle a_j\big\langle a_j\big|\right)^2 \\ &= \sum_{j,k} \big|a_j\big\rangle a_j \underbrace{\big\langle a_j\big|a_k\big\rangle}_{=\delta_{jk}} a_k\big\langle a_k\big| \\ &= \sum_j \big|a_j\big\rangle a_j^2\big\langle a_j\big| = \sum_j \big|a_j\big\rangle f(a_j)\big\langle a_j\big|\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.1.18}$$

indeed. Similarly, you easily show that it works for other powers of A, then for all polynomials, then for all functions that can be approximated by, or related to, polynomials, and so forth. But what is really needed to ensure that $f(A)$ is well defined is that the numerical function $f(a_j)$ is well defined for all eigenvalues a_j. As a consequence, two functions of A are the same if they agree for all a_j,

$$f(A) = g(A) \quad \text{if} \quad f(a_j) = g(a_j) \quad \text{for all } j\,. \tag{1.1.19}$$

Exercise 1 provides an example.

We recall that operators of two particular kinds play special roles in quantum mechanics. These are the *hermitian** operators, which are equal to their adjoints,

$$\text{hermitian:} \quad H = H^\dagger\,, \tag{1.1.20}$$

and the *unitary* operators,

$$\text{unitary:} \quad U = \big(U^\dagger\big)^{-1}, \quad UU^\dagger = 1 = U^\dagger U\,, \tag{1.1.21}$$

*Charles HERMITE (1822–1901)

for which the inverse equals the adjoint; see Exercises 2 and 3 for properties of hermitian and unitary operators and the link between them.

Several observables A, B, C, ... have their state kets $|a_j\rangle$, $|b_k\rangle$, $|c_l\rangle$, ... with probability amplitudes $\langle a_j|b_k\rangle$, $\langle b_k|c_l\rangle$, $\langle c_l|a_j\rangle$, ... These amplitudes are not independent, however, but must obey the composition law

$$\langle a_j|b_k\rangle = \sum_l \langle a_j|c_l\rangle\langle c_l|b_k\rangle\,, \tag{1.1.22}$$

an immediate consequence of the completeness of the $|c_l\rangle$ kets. The self-suggesting interpretation

> "First there is $|b_k\rangle$, eventually $|a_j\rangle$, and in between $|c_l\rangle$, but we do not know which C value was actually the case and so we must sum over all c_l." (1.1.23)

is *wrong*. The assumption of an actual C value at an intermediate stage leads to logical contradictions.

There are two main reasons for this. First, the l sum is not a sum of products of probabilities but of probability amplitudes. The resulting statement about probabilities reads

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{prob}(a_j \leftarrow b_k) = &\sum_l \mathrm{prob}(a_j \leftarrow c_l)\,\mathrm{prob}(c_l \leftarrow b_k) \\ &+ \sum_{l\neq l'} \langle c_{l'}|a_j\rangle\langle a_j|c_l\rangle\langle c_l|b_k\rangle\langle b_k|c_{l'}\rangle\,,\end{aligned} \tag{1.1.24}$$

where the appearance of the $l \neq l'$ terms signifies the possible occurrence of quantum mechanical interferences. Only when the $l \neq l'$ sum happens to vanish, which is an exceptional situation, the interpretation in (1.1.23) is justified.

Second, there is the fundamental aspect that some observables exclude each other mutually. This feature of quantum mechanics has no true analog in classical physics. In particular, there are pairs of complementary observables. The pair A, B is complementary if the probabilities in (1.1.4),

$$\mathrm{prob}(b_k \leftarrow a_j) = \left|\langle b_k|a_j\rangle\right|^2\,, \tag{1.1.25}$$

do not depend on the quantum numbers a_j and b_k. Physically speaking, if the system is prepared in a state in which the value of A is known, that is, we can predict with certainty the outcome of a measurement of property A, then all measurement results are equally probable in a measurement of B, and *vice versa*.

Now, if C and D are complementary, we have the sum over intermediate C values of (1.1.22) supplemented by a sum over intermediate D values,

$$\langle a_j|b_k\rangle = \sum_l \langle a_j|c_l\rangle\langle c_l|b_k\rangle = \sum_m \langle a_j|d_m\rangle\langle d_m|b_k\rangle\,. \tag{1.1.26}$$

The wrong interpretation after (1.1.22) would then imply that both C and D have definite, though unknown, values at the intermediate stage because the two sums are on equal footing. But this is utterly impossible.

Given operator A with its (nondegenerate) eigenvalues a_j and the kets $|a_j\rangle$, can we always find another observable, B, such that A, B are a pair of complementary observables? Yes, we can by an explicit construction, for which

$$|b_k\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{j=1}^{N} |a_j\rangle\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}jk} \tag{1.1.27}$$

is the basic example; more about this in Section 1.2.1. It is here assumed that we deal with a quantum degree of freedom for which there can be at most N different values for any measurement.

We need to verify that the B states of this construction are orthonormal. Indeed, they are,

$$\begin{aligned}\langle b_k|b_l\rangle &= \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j,m} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}jk} \underbrace{\langle a_j|a_m\rangle}_{=\delta_{jm}} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}lm} \\ &= \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}j(k-l)} = \delta_{kl}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.1.28}$$

Then,

$$B = \sum_k |b_k\rangle b_k \langle b_k| \tag{1.1.29}$$

with any convenient choice for the nondegenerate B values b_k will do. By construction, we have

$$\left|\langle a_j|b_k\rangle\right|^2 = \left|\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}jk}\right|^2 = \frac{1}{N} \tag{1.1.30}$$

so that A, B are a complementary pair, indeed. We note that this property is actually primarily a property of the two bases of kets (and bras) associated with the pair of observables. A common terminology is to call such pairs of bases *unbiased*.

In passing, it is worth mentioning that there are quite basic questions about sets of bases that are pairwise unbiased — referred to as *mutually unbiased bases* — that do not have a known answer. Quantum kinematics is not a closed subject but still the object of research despite the profound understanding that has resulted from a century of intense studies.

1.2 Bohr's principle of complementarity

1.2.1 *Complementary observables*

We consider the situation where we can have at most N different outcomes of a measurement, that is, there are no more than N pairwise orthogonal states available. One such set is composed of all the eigenstates of some observable A, with the respective kets denoted by $|a_1\rangle, |a_2\rangle, \ldots, |a_N\rangle$, which make up a basis of orthonormal kets. Another set is obtained immediately by a cyclic permutation, effected by the unitary operator U,

$$\begin{aligned} \big|a_1\big\rangle &\longrightarrow \big|a_2\big\rangle = U\big|a_1\big\rangle\,, \\ \big|a_2\big\rangle &\longrightarrow \big|a_3\big\rangle = U\big|a_2\big\rangle\,, \\ &\vdots \\ \big|a_N\big\rangle &\longrightarrow \big|a_1\big\rangle = U\big|a_N\big\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.1}$$

generally

$$U\big|a_j\big\rangle = \big|a_{j+1}\big\rangle\,, \tag{1.2.2}$$

where the index is to be understood modulo N so that $|a_{N+1}\rangle = |a_1\rangle$, for example. Applying U twice shifts the index by 2,

$$U^2\big|a_j\big\rangle = \big|a_{j+2}\big\rangle\,, \tag{1.2.3}$$

and N such shifts amount to doing nothing,

$$U^N\big|a_j\big\rangle = \big|a_{j+N}\big\rangle = \big|a_j\big\rangle\,. \tag{1.2.4}$$

Accordingly, we have

$$U^N = 1 \tag{1.2.5}$$

so that U is a unitary operator of period N.

The eigenvalues of U must obey the same equation

$$u^N = 1 \quad \text{if} \quad U\big|u\big\rangle = \big|u\big\rangle u \tag{1.2.6}$$

for which

$$u_k = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}k}, \quad k = 1, 2, \ldots, N \tag{1.2.7}$$

are the possible solutions, all of which occur. We can, therefore, write the equation for U also in the factorized form

$$\begin{aligned} U^N - 1 &= (U - u_1)(U - u_2)\cdots(U - u_N) \\ &= \prod_{k=1}^{N} (U - u_k)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.8}$$

Let us isolate one factor,

$$U^N - 1 = (U - u_k) \prod_{l(\neq k)} (U - u_l)\,, \tag{1.2.9}$$

and note the following:

$$\prod_{l(\neq k)} (U - u_l)\big|u_m\big\rangle = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if} \quad m \neq k\,, \\ \big|u_k\big\rangle\alpha & \text{if} \quad m = k\,, \end{cases} \tag{1.2.10}$$

with some complex number $\alpha \neq 0$, because one of the factors $U - u_l \to u_m - u_l$ vanishes if $m \neq k$ but all are nonzero if $m = k$. We conclude that the operator acting on $|u_m\rangle$ in (1.2.10) is a numerical multiple of $|u_k\rangle\langle u_k|$, the projector on the kth eigenstate. This product of $N-1$ factors is a polynomial in U of degree $N - 1$, for which we can also give another construction. We apply the familiar identity

$$\begin{aligned} X^N - 1 &= (X - 1)\Big(1 + X + X^2 + \cdots + X^{N-1}\Big) \\ &= (X - 1) \sum_{l=0}^{N-1} X^l \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.11}$$

to $X = U/u_k$,

$$\begin{aligned} U^N - 1 = (U/u_k)^N - 1 &= (U/u_k - 1) \sum_{l=0}^{N-1} (U/u_k)^l \\ &= (U/u_k - 1) \sum_{l=1}^{N} (U/u_k)^l\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.12}$$

where the first step exploits $u_k^N = 1$ and the last step makes use of $(U/u_k)^0 = 1 = (U/u_k)^N$. Now, for $U \to u_k$, the sum equals N, and so we arrive at

$$\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big| = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{l=1}^{N}\big(U/u_k\big)^l\,. \tag{1.2.13}$$

So, we know the eigenvalues of U and have an explicit construction for the projectors on those eigenvalues as a function of U itself, and now we find out how the eigenkets of U are related to the original set of kets $|a_j\rangle$. We begin with

$$\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big|a_N\big\rangle = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{l=1}^{N} u_k^{-l}\underbrace{U^l\big|a_N\big\rangle}_{=\,|a_l\rangle} \tag{1.2.14}$$

and then apply $\langle a_N|$ from the left,

$$\big\langle a_N\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big|a_N\big\rangle = \Big|\big\langle u_k\big|a_N\big\rangle\Big|^2 = \frac{1}{N}u_k^{-N} = \frac{1}{N}\,. \tag{1.2.15}$$

We make use of the freedom to choose the overall complex phase of $|u_k\rangle$ and agree on

$$\big\langle u_k\big|a_N\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\,, \tag{1.2.16}$$

with the consequence

$$\begin{aligned}\big|u_k\big\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{l=1}^{N}\big|a_l\big\rangle u_k^{-l}\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{l=1}^{N}\big|a_l\big\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl}\end{aligned} \tag{1.2.17}$$

and, after taking the adjoint,

$$\big\langle u_k\big| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{l=1}^{N}\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl}\big\langle a_l\big|\,. \tag{1.2.18}$$

We read off that

$$\big\langle u_k\big|a_l\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl} \tag{1.2.19}$$

of which the $l = N$ case is (1.2.16).

We have now a second set of bras and kets, for which we can repeat the story of cyclic permutations, effected by the unitary operator V,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle u_k|V &= \langle u_{k+1}|\,, \\ \langle u_k|V^2 &= \langle u_{k+2}|\,, \\ &\vdots \\ \langle u_k|V^N &= \langle u_k|\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.20}$$

In full analogy with what we did above for U, we conclude here that

$$V^N = 1: \quad V \text{ is unitary with period } N\,, \tag{1.2.21}$$

that the eigenvalues of V are $v_l = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}l}$, and that the projector on the lth eigenvalue is

$$|v_l\rangle\langle v_l| = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=1}^{N}(V/v_l)^k \tag{1.2.22}$$

and are led to

$$\langle u_N|v_l\rangle\langle v_l| = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=1}^{N} v_l^{-k}\langle u_k| \tag{1.2.23}$$

and then

$$\langle u_N|v_l\rangle\langle v_l|u_N\rangle = \Big|\langle u_N|v_l\rangle\Big|^2 = \frac{1}{N}\,. \tag{1.2.24}$$

Here, too, we choose $\langle u_N|v_l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}$ and establish

$$\langle v_l| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{k=1}^{N}\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl}\langle u_k| \tag{1.2.25}$$

as well as

$$|v_l\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\sum_{k=1}^{N}|u_k\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl}\,. \tag{1.2.26}$$

Can we continue like this and get more and more sets of kets? No! Because the kets $|v_l\rangle$ are identical with the kets $|a_l\rangle$; see

$$\begin{aligned}\big|v_l\big\rangle &= \sum_{k=1}^{N}\big|u_k\big\rangle \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl}}_{=\langle u_k|a_l\rangle} \\ &= \underbrace{\left(\sum_k \big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big|\right)}_{=1}\big|a_l\big\rangle = \big|a_l\big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.27}$$

We have been led back to the initial set of kets.

In summary, we have a pair of reciprocally defined unitary operators,

$$U\big|v_l\big\rangle = \big|v_{l+1}\big\rangle\,, \quad \big\langle u_k\big|V = \big\langle u_{k+1}\big|\,, \tag{1.2.28}$$

which are of period N,

$$U^N = 1\,, \quad V^N = 1\,. \tag{1.2.29}$$

Their eigenstates are related to each other by the probability amplitudes

$$\big\langle u_k\big|v_l\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl} \tag{1.2.30}$$

so that the probabilities

$$\Big|\big\langle u_k\big|v_l\big\rangle\Big|^2 = \frac{1}{N} \tag{1.2.31}$$

do not depend on k and l. Accordingly, the two bases are unbiased and U and V are a pair of complementary observables.

Being complementary partners of each other, U and V should have a simple commutation relation. We find it by considering the effect of UV and VU upon $\langle u_k|$,

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle u_k\big|UV &= u_k\big\langle u_k\big|V = u_k\big\langle u_{k+1}\big|\,, \\ \big\langle u_k\big|VU &= \big\langle u_{k+1}\big|U = u_{k+1}\big\langle u_{k+1}\big|\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.32}$$

Since $u_{k+1} = u_k\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}}$, this establishes

$$\big\langle u_k\big|VU = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}}u_k\big\langle u_{k+1}\big| = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}}\big\langle u_k\big|UV\,, \tag{1.2.33}$$

and the completeness of the bras $\langle u_k|$ implies

$$UV = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}} VU\,, \qquad VU = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}} UV\,. \tag{1.2.34}$$

The generalization to

$$U^k V^l = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl} V^l U^k\,, \qquad V^l U^k = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl} U^k V^l \tag{1.2.35}$$

is immediate. These are the *Weyl** *commutation relations* for the complementary pair U, V.

1.2.2 *Algebraic completeness*

Now, all functions of U are polynomials of degree $N-1$, and all functions of V are also such polynomials. Therefore, a general function of both U and V is always of the form

$$f(U,V) = \sum_{k,l=0}^{N-1} f_{kl} U^k V^l = \sum_{k,l=1}^{N} f_{kl} U^k V^l \tag{1.2.36}$$

or can be brought into this form. It is written here such that all Us are to the left of all Vs in the products, but this is no restriction because the relations (1.2.35) state that other products can always be brought into this U, V-ordered form.

In fact, all such functions of U and V make up all operators for this degree of freedom, which is to say that the complementary pair U, V is *algebraically complete*. To make this point, we consider an arbitrary operator F and note that then the numbers $\langle u_k|F|v_l\rangle$ are known. We normalize these mixed matrix elements by dividing by $\langle u_k|v_l\rangle$, thus defining the set of N^2 numbers

$$f(u_k, v_l) = \frac{\langle u_k|F|v_l\rangle}{\langle u_k|v_l\rangle}\,. \tag{1.2.37}$$

Multiply by $|u_k\rangle\langle u_k|$ from the left and by $|v_l\rangle\langle v_l|$ from the right and sum over k and l,

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{k,l} |u_k\rangle\langle u_k|f(u_k,v_l)|v_l\rangle\langle v_l| &= \sum_{k,l} |u_k\rangle \underbrace{\langle u_k|v_l\rangle f(u_k,v_l)}_{=\langle u_k|F|v_l\rangle} \langle v_l| \\ &= \underbrace{\sum_k |u_k\rangle\langle u_k|}_{=1}\, F \underbrace{\sum_l |v_l\rangle\langle v_l|}_{=1} = F\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.38}$$

*Claus Hugo Hermann WEYL (1885–1955)

Indeed, we have succeeded in writing F as a function of U and V, with all Us to the left of all Vs,

$$\begin{aligned} F &= \sum_{k,l} \big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big| f(u_k, v_l) \big|v_l\big\rangle\big\langle v_l\big| \\ &= \frac{1}{N^2} \sum_{k,l,m,n} (U/u_k)^m f(u_k, v_l) (V/v_l)^n = \sum_{k,l} f_{kl} U^k V^l \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.39}$$

with

$$f_{kl} = \frac{1}{N^2} \sum_{m,n} u_m^{-k} f(u_m, v_n) v_n^{-l} \tag{1.2.40}$$

after interchanging $k \leftrightarrow m$, $l \leftrightarrow n$ in the summation.

With the general version of the Kronecker delta symbol,

$$\delta(x, y) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if} \quad x = y\,, \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad x \neq y\,, \end{cases} \tag{1.2.41}$$

we can write

$$\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big| = \sum_j \big|u_j\big\rangle \delta(u_j, u_k) \big\langle u_j\big| = \delta(U, u_k)\,, \tag{1.2.42}$$

where the last step is an application of the general form of an operator function $f(A)$, the spectral decomposition in (1.1.17). Likewise, we have

$$\big|v_l\big\rangle\big\langle v_l\big| = \delta(V, v_l)\,, \tag{1.2.43}$$

and then

$$F = \sum_{k,l} \delta(U, u_k)\, f(u_k, v_l)\, \delta(V, v_l)\,. \tag{1.2.44}$$

In view of the delta symbols, we can evaluate the sums over k and l and so arrive at

$$F = f(U; V)\,, \tag{1.2.45}$$

where the semicolon is a reminder that all Us stand to the left of all Vs in this expression.

We return to (1.2.37) and reveal the following:

$$\begin{aligned} f(u_k, v_l) &= \frac{\big\langle u_k\big|F\big|v_l\big\rangle\big\langle v_l\big|u_k\big\rangle}{\big\langle u_k\big|v_l\big\rangle\big\langle v_l\big|u_k\big\rangle} = N \big\langle u_k\big|F\big|v_l\big\rangle\big\langle v_l\big|u_k\big\rangle \\ &= N \operatorname{tr}\Big(\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big|F\big|v_l\big\rangle\big\langle v_l\big|\Big) = N \operatorname{tr}\Big(\delta(U, u_k)\, F\, \delta(V, v_l)\Big)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.46}$$

where we recall the defining property of the *trace*, that is,

$$\mathrm{tr}\Big(\big|1\big\rangle\big\langle 2\big|\Big) = \big\langle 2\big|1\big\rangle \tag{1.2.47}$$

for any ket $|1\rangle$ and any bra $\langle 2|$. The relation (1.2.46) is the reciprocal to (1.2.44) inasmuch as we go from $F(U,V)$ to $f(u,v)$ in (1.2.46) and from $f(u,v)$ to $F(U,V)$ in (1.2.44).

We thus have a simple procedure for finding the U,V-ordered version of a given operator F:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{First evaluate } f(u_k,v_l) = \frac{\big\langle u_k\big|F\big|v_l\big\rangle}{\big\langle u_k\big|v_l\big\rangle}\,, \text{ then}\\ &\text{replace } u_k \to U,\ v_l \to V \text{ with due attention}\\ &\text{to the ordering in products, all } U \text{ operators}\\ &\text{must stand to the left of all } V \text{ operators.}\end{aligned} \tag{1.2.48}$$

Here is an elementary example. For $F = VU$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} f(u_k,v_l) &= \frac{\big\langle u_k\big|VU\big|v_l\big\rangle}{\big\langle u_k\big|v_l\big\rangle} = \frac{\big\langle u_{k+1}\big|v_{l+1}\big\rangle}{\big\langle u_k\big|v_l\big\rangle}\\ &= \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}(k+1)(l+1)}/\sqrt{N}}{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl}/\sqrt{N}} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}(k+l+1)} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.49}$$

or

$$f(u_k,v_l) = u_k v_l\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}} \tag{1.2.50}$$

so that

$$VU = F = UV\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}}\,, \tag{1.2.51}$$

which we know already from (1.2.34).

1.2.3 *Bohr's principle. Technical formulation*

In summary, we have established a clear technical formulation of Bohr's* *principle of complementarity*:

$$\begin{aligned}&\text{(1) for each quantum degree of freedom, there}\\ &\qquad\text{is a pair of complementary observables}\\ &\text{and (2) all observables are functions of this pair.}\end{aligned} \tag{1.2.52}$$

*Niels Henrik David BOHR (1885–1962)

This wording of the principle is a minor extension of the insights gained by Weyl and Schwinger* in their seminal works on quantum kinematics. We comment on the phenomenological implication of the complementarity principle in Section 1.2.7.

1.2.4 *Composite degrees of freedom*

In the above reasoning, the dimension N of the degree of freedom can be any integer number: prime or composite. In the case of composite numbers, we can regard the quantum degree of freedom as being composite as well, namely composed of simpler systems. It is sufficient to illustrate this in the example of $N = 6 = 2 \times 3$.

Here, we have the periodic unitary operators

$$U^6 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad V^6 = 1 \tag{1.2.53}$$

of period 6, but as

$$\left(U^3\right)^2 = 1\,, \quad \left(U^2\right)^3 = 1 \tag{1.2.54}$$

show, there are also operators with periods 2 and 3. This suggests that we can regard the $N = 6$ degree of freedom as composed of one with $N = 2$ and another one with $N = 3$.

To make this point more explicitly, let us arrange the six basis states $|a_1\rangle, \ldots, |a_6\rangle$ $\big(= |v_1\rangle, \ldots, |v_6\rangle\big)$ in a two-dimensional array

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ \bullet & \bullet & \bullet \\ \\ \bullet & \bullet & \bullet \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{array} \tag{1.2.55}$$

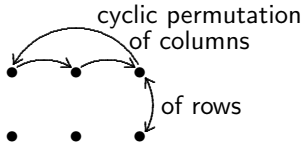
and then relabel them accordingly,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} 11 & 12 & 13 \\ \bullet & \bullet & \bullet \\ \\ \bullet & \bullet & \bullet \\ 21 & 22 & 23 \end{array} \tag{1.2.56}$$

Rather than the original cyclic permutation $1 \to 2 \to 3 \to 4 \to 5 \to 6 \to 1$, we now have cyclic permutations of the rows $11 \leftrightarrow 21$ & $12 \leftrightarrow 22$ & $13 \leftrightarrow 23$

*Julian Schwinger (1918–1994)

and of the columns $11 \to 12 \to 13 \to 11$ & $21 \to 22 \to 23 \to 21$:



(1.2.57)

So, there are two operators effecting cyclic permutations, one with period 2 and the other with period 3,

$$U_1^2 = 1\,, \quad U_2^3 = 1\,, \tag{1.2.58}$$

which act on the respective indices,

$$\begin{aligned} U_1\big|v_{jk}\big\rangle &= \big|v_{j+1k}\big\rangle\,, \\ U_2\big|v_{jk}\big\rangle &= \big|v_{jk+1}\big\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.59}$$

where the first index j is modulo 2 and the second index k is modulo 3. Clearly, U_1 commutes with U_2

$$U_1U_2 = U_2U_1\,, \tag{1.2.60}$$

and it is easy to show (do this yourself) that this is also true for their complementary partners V_1 and V_2. That is,

$$V_1V_2 = V_2V_1\,, \quad U_1V_2 = V_2U_1\,, \quad V_1U_2 = U_2V_1\,, \tag{1.2.61}$$

and the pairs U_1, V_1 and U_2, V_2 are pairs of complementary observables of the $N = 2$ and $N = 3$ types, respectively,

$$U_1V_1 = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{2}} V_1U_1\,, \quad U_2V_2 = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{3}} V_2U_2\,. \tag{1.2.62}$$

In short, the pairs U_1, V_1 and U_2, V_2 refer to independent degrees of freedom, the prime degrees of freedom that are the constituents of the composite degree of freedom with $N = 6$; see also Exercise 16.

In the general situation of a composite value of N other than 6, this process of factorization can be repeated until the given $N = N_1N_2\cdots N_n$ is broken up into the prime degrees of freedom of which it is composed or can be thought of as being composed. As a consequence, the elementary quantum degrees of freedom have N values that are prime and cannot be decomposed further.

1.2.5 *The limit $N \to \infty$. Symmetric case*

The primes $N = 2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, \ldots$ are all odd, except for $N = 2$, so that we can restrict ourselves to odd N values in the limit $N \to \infty$. It is then possible to change from the numbering

$$k = 1, 2, \ldots, N \tag{1.2.63}$$

to a new numbering

$$k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm \frac{N-1}{2} \,. \tag{1.2.64}$$

Further, as N grows, the basic unit of complex phase $2\pi/N$ gets arbitrarily small. We introduce the small positive quantity ϵ to deal with this,

$$\frac{2\pi}{N} = \epsilon^2 \,. \tag{1.2.65}$$

Aiming at a continuous degree of freedom in the limit $N \to \infty$, we also relabel the states in accordance with

$$\begin{aligned} k \longrightarrow k\epsilon = x = 0, \pm\epsilon, \pm 2\epsilon, \ldots, \pm\Big(\frac{\pi}{\epsilon} - \frac{\epsilon}{2}\Big) \,, \\ l \longrightarrow l\epsilon = p = 0, \pm\epsilon, \pm 2\epsilon, \ldots, \pm\Big(\frac{\pi}{\epsilon} - \frac{\epsilon}{2}\Big) \,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.66}$$

Then, the numbers x and p will cover the real axis, $-\infty < x, p < \infty$, when $N \to \infty$, $\epsilon \to 0$.

The unitary operator U acting on $|v_l\rangle$ increases l by 1 so that it effects $p \to p + \epsilon$. Likewise, V applied to $\langle u_k|$ results in $x \to x + \epsilon$. This suggests the identification of hermitian operators X and P such that

$$\begin{aligned} U &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon X} \quad \text{with} \quad X = X^\dagger \,, \\ V &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon P} \quad \text{with} \quad P = P^\dagger \,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.67}$$

The Weyl commutator (1.2.35),

$$U^l V^k = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl} V^k U^l \,, \tag{1.2.68}$$

then appears as

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}l\epsilon X}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}k\epsilon P} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}k\epsilon l\epsilon}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}k\epsilon P}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}l\epsilon X} \,, \tag{1.2.69}$$

that is,

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xp}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX} \,. \tag{1.2.70}$$

The two equivalent versions

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP} &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p(X-x)}\,, \\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}pX} &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x(P-p)} \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.71}$$

look much more conspicuous after we use the identity

$$U^{-1}f(A)U = f(U^{-1}AU)\,, \tag{1.2.72}$$

which — as we recall — is valid for any operator function $f(A)$ and any unitary operator U, twice to establish

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP}X\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP}\right)} &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p(X-x)}\,, \\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x\left(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX}P\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}pX}\right)} &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x(P-p)}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.73}$$

It is tempting to conclude that

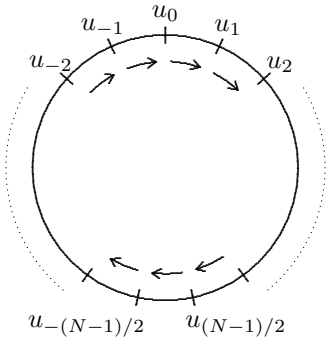
$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP}X\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP} &= X-x\,, \\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX}P\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}pX} &= P-p\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.74}$$

but this does not follow without imposing a restricting condition, just as

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\alpha} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\beta} \quad (\alpha,\beta\text{: two real numbers}) \tag{1.2.75}$$

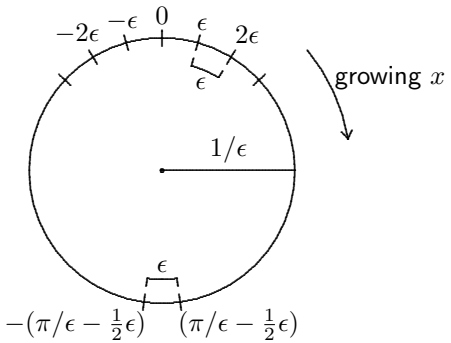
does not imply $\alpha = \beta$, but only that $\alpha - \beta$ is an integer multiple of 2π.

To understand the restricting condition, we visualize the cyclic permutation by a circle:



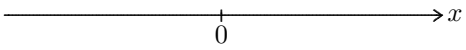
(1.2.76)

where an application of V turns the wheel of u_k states by one notch. For large N, small ϵ, the picture is



(1.2.77)

The circumference of the circle is $N\epsilon = 2\pi/\epsilon$ so that the radius is $1/\epsilon$ and becomes infinitely large as $N \to \infty$, $\epsilon \to 0$. In this limit then, any *finite* portion of the circle is indistinguishable from a straight line,



(1.2.78)

If we thus restrict ourselves to situations in which only a finite range of x values matters, thereby explicitly giving up the periodicity that would force us to identify $x = +\infty$ with $x = -\infty$, the statements in (1.2.74) become correct.

By comparing terms that are of first order in x or p in (1.2.74), we get

$$XP - PX = \mathrm{i} \quad \text{or} \quad [X, P] = \mathrm{i}\,, \tag{1.2.79}$$

which is, of course, Heisenberg's* commutation relation for position X and momentum P, here for dimensionless operators, rather than the normal ones with metrical dimensions of length and mass-times-velocity. As a consequence, Planck's† constant $\hbar$ does not appear on the right-hand side.

With this commutator established by the first-order terms, all higher-order terms take care of themselves, which is seen most easily by differentiation. Consider, say, the first statement in (1.2.74), where we get

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP} X\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP}\Big) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP} \underbrace{(-\mathrm{i}PX + X\mathrm{i}P)}_{=\mathrm{i}[X,P] = -1} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP} = -1 \tag{1.2.80}$$

*Werner Heisenberg (1901–1976) †Max Karl Ernst Ludwig Planck (1858–1947)

on the left and

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial x}(X - x) = -1 \tag{1.2.81}$$

on the right. These are two functions of x, which have the same derivative everywhere and agree in the vicinity of $x = 0$. It follows that the functions are the same for all values of x.

These $N \to \infty$ considerations for U and V have a counterpart in their respective kets and bras. It should be reasonably clear, given what we know about the X, P pair from *Basic Matters* and *Simple Systems*, or any other introductory text, that

$$\langle u_k | v_l \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}kl} \tag{1.2.82}$$

turns into

$$\langle x | p \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp} \,, \tag{1.2.83}$$

and the orthonormality and completeness relations

$$\langle u_k | u_{k'} \rangle = \delta_{kk'} \,, \quad \sum_k |u_k\rangle\langle u_k| = 1 \tag{1.2.84}$$

become

$$\langle x | x' \rangle = \delta(x - x') \,, \quad \int \mathrm{d}x \, |x\rangle\langle x| = 1 \,, \tag{1.2.85}$$

and likewise for the momentum states, with consistent replacements of Kronecker delta symbols by Dirac* delta functions and summations by integrations.

More specifically, we need to identify

$$\langle x| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon}} \langle u_k| \Big|_{\epsilon \to 0} \quad \text{with} \quad k\epsilon = x \tag{1.2.86}$$

and

$$|p\rangle = |v_l\rangle \frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon}} \Big|_{\epsilon \to 0} \quad \text{with} \quad l\epsilon = p \,, \tag{1.2.87}$$

and then we have

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon} \langle u_k | v_l \rangle \xrightarrow[\epsilon \to 0]{} \langle x | p \rangle \,. \tag{1.2.88}$$

*Paul Adrien Maurice DIRAC (1902–1984)

As one example of many that could be used for illustration equally well, let us take a look at the transition from

$$\delta(U,u_k)=\frac{1}{N}\sum_{l(\neq k)}\big(U/u_k\big)^l=\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big| \tag{1.2.89}$$

to

$$\delta(X-x)=\int\frac{\mathrm{d}p}{2\pi}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p(X-x)}=\big|x\big\rangle\big\langle x\big|\,. \tag{1.2.90}$$

We proceed from

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{\epsilon}\delta(U,u_k)&=\frac{1}{N\epsilon}\sum_{l(\neq k)}\Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\epsilon X}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\epsilon x}\Big)^l\\&=\underbrace{\frac{1}{N\epsilon^2}}_{=1/(2\pi)}\sum_{l(\neq k)}\Delta p\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p(X-x)}\end{aligned} \tag{1.2.91}$$

with $p=l\epsilon$ and $\Delta p=\epsilon$ for the difference between successive p values. Upon recognizing that the l summation is the Riemann* sum for the integral in

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon}\delta(U,u_k)=\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{\epsilon/2\,-\,\pi/\epsilon}^{\pi/\epsilon\,-\,\epsilon/2}\mathrm{d}p\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p(X-x)}\,, \tag{1.2.92}$$

the limit $\epsilon\to 0$ is immediate,

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon}\delta(U,u_k)\xrightarrow[\epsilon\,\to\,0]{}\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\mathrm{d}p\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}p(X-x)}=\delta(X-x)\,. \tag{1.2.93}$$

The familiar Fourier† representation of the Dirac delta function establishes the last identity. The other limit offered by (1.2.89) in conjunction with (1.2.86),

$$\frac{1}{\epsilon}\delta(U,u_k)=\bigg(\big|u_k\big\rangle\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon}}\bigg)\bigg(\frac{1}{\sqrt{\epsilon}}\big\langle u_k\big|\bigg)\xrightarrow[\epsilon\,\to\,0]{}\big|x\big\rangle\big\langle x\big|\,, \tag{1.2.94}$$

is consistent with what we get from the spectral decomposition of $\delta(X-x)$,

$$\delta(X-x)=\int\mathrm{d}x'\,\big|x'\big\rangle\delta(x'-x)\big\langle x'\big|=\big|x\big\rangle\big\langle x\big|\,, \tag{1.2.95}$$

as it should be.

*Georg Friedrich Bernhard Riemann (1826–1866)
†Jean Baptiste Joseph Fourier (1768–1830)

It is natural and convenient to use dimensionless operators X and P for this study of the limit $N \to \infty$, but eventually we want to have the correct metrical dimensions of length for position X and mass-times-velocity for momentum P. All that is needed is the introduction of Planck's constant $\hbar$ in the right places, such as

$$\big[X, P\big] = \mathrm{i}\hbar \tag{1.2.96}$$

for the Heisenberg commutator rather than (1.2.79) and

$$\big\langle x\big|p\big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xp/\hbar}}{\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}} \tag{1.2.97}$$

for the xp transformation function rather than (1.2.83). The orthonormality and completeness relations for the position states in (1.2.85) continue to hold without change, but we should take note of the metrical dimension $(\text{length})^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ of $\big|x\big\rangle$ and $\big\langle x\big|$. Corresponding remarks apply to the momentum states.

For the record and future reference, it is worth recalling the basic relations between commutators and differentiations,

$$\begin{aligned} \big[X, f(X,P)\big] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial f(X,P)}{\partial P}\,, \\ \big[f(X,P), P\big] &= \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial f(X,P)}{\partial X}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.98}$$

where $f(X,P)$ is any well-defined function of X and P. These generalizations of the Heisenberg commutator are in fact implications of (1.2.96) and in turn contain (1.2.96) as special cases; see Exercise 17.

1.2.6 *The limit $N \to \infty$. Asymmetric case*

The limit $N \to \infty$ discussed in Section 1.2.5 is *symmetric* inasmuch as U and V are treated on completely equal footing. This symmetric procedure is, however, not the only way of performing the limit. There are, in fact, three important *asymmetric* limits, of which we shall consider one.

This time we start with the relation

$$\delta_{kl} = \sum_m \big\langle u_k\big|v_m\big\rangle\big\langle v_m\big|u_l\big\rangle\,, \tag{1.2.99}$$

which states the completeness of the V states and the orthonormality of

the U states. In

$$\langle u_k | v_m \rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}km} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}k} \Big)^m , \tag{1.2.100}$$

we encounter a phase factor

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}k} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} \quad \text{with} \quad \phi = \frac{2\pi}{N}k \quad \text{and} \quad k = 0, \ldots, N-1 \,. \tag{1.2.101}$$

The phases $\phi = \dfrac{2\pi}{N}k$ and $\phi' = \dfrac{2\pi}{N}l$ will cover the whole range

$$0 \leq \phi, \phi' < 2\pi \tag{1.2.102}$$

densely in the limit $N \to \infty$. We note immediately that the relation

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}k} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi} \tag{1.2.103}$$

identifies ϕ only up to an arbitrary multiple of 2π so that there is no point in distinguishing between ϕ and $\phi + 2\pi$.

For the m summation, we choose $m = 0, \pm 1, \ldots, \pm\frac{1}{2}(N-1)$ so that

$$\begin{aligned} N\delta_{kl} = \sum_{m=-\frac{1}{2}(N-1)}^{\frac{1}{2}(N-1)} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m(\phi-\phi')} &= \left\{ \begin{array}{lll} N & \text{if} & \phi = \phi' \pmod{2\pi} \\ 0 & \text{if} & \phi \neq \phi' \pmod{2\pi} \end{array} \right\} \\ &= N\delta(\phi, \phi') \pmod{2\pi} \\ &= N \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\phi, \phi' + 2\pi n) \,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.2.104}$$

In the limit $N \to \infty$, the sum is

$$\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m(\phi-\phi')} = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\phi - \phi' - 2\pi n) \,. \tag{1.2.105}$$

This so-called *Poisson** *identity* can be verified by comparing the Fourier coefficients of these two periodic functions of ϕ. On the left, we get

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{\mathrm{d}\phi}{2\pi} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}j\phi} \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m(\phi-\phi')} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}j\phi'} \,, \tag{1.2.106}$$

and on the right,

$$\int_0^{2\pi} \frac{\mathrm{d}\phi}{2\pi} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}j\phi} 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\phi - \phi' - 2\pi n) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}j\phi'} \,. \tag{1.2.107}$$

*Siméon Denis Poisson (1781–1840)

Indeed, all Fourier coefficients are identical and, therefore, the functions are the same.

We are thus invited to introduce bras $\langle\phi|$ and kets $|m\rangle$ in accordance with

$$\langle\phi| = \langle\phi + 2\pi| \quad \text{(periodic)} \tag{1.2.108}$$

and

$$\langle\phi|m\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}\,. \tag{1.2.109}$$

The two bases are unbiased and

$$\begin{aligned}\langle\phi|\phi'\rangle &= \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}\langle\phi|m\rangle\langle m|\phi'\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi}\sum_{m}\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m(\phi-\phi')} = \sum_{n}\delta(\phi-\phi'-2\pi n)\end{aligned} \tag{1.2.110}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\langle m|m'\rangle &= \int_{(2\pi)}\mathrm{d}\phi\,\langle m|\phi\rangle\langle\phi|m'\rangle \\ &= \int_{(2\pi)}\frac{\mathrm{d}\phi}{2\pi}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(m-m')\phi} = \delta_{mm'}\end{aligned} \tag{1.2.111}$$

state the orthonormality and completeness of both sets of kets and bras. The ϕ integration in (1.2.111) covers any interval of 2π, such as $0\cdots 2\pi$ or $-\pi\cdots\pi$.

In the unitary operator

$$\sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}|m\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\varphi}\langle m| = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L/\hbar}\,, \tag{1.2.112}$$

we recognize the hermitian operator

$$L = \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty}|m\rangle\hbar m\langle m| \tag{1.2.113}$$

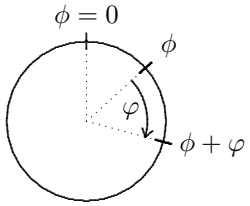
that generates shifts of ϕ,

$$\langle\phi| \longrightarrow \langle\phi|\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L/\hbar} = \langle\phi+\varphi|\,. \tag{1.2.114}$$

This follows from (1.2.109),

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle\phi\big|\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L/\hbar}\big|m\big\rangle &= \big\langle\phi\big|m\big\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\varphi} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\phi}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m\varphi}\\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}m(\phi+\varphi)} = \big\langle\phi+\varphi\big|m\big\rangle\,,\end{aligned}\tag{1.2.115}$$

in conjunction with the completeness of the $|m\rangle$ kets. Geometrically speaking, the shift in (1.2.114) is a rotation around a fixed axis:



(1.2.116)

As it should be, this picture is consistent with the periodic nature of the bras $\langle\phi|$. We conclude that L is the angular momentum operator associated with the rotation around this axis.

The differential statement corresponding to (1.2.114) is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}\big\langle\phi+\varphi\big|\,\Big|_{\varphi\,=\,0} = \big\langle\phi\big|\,\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}L\tag{1.2.117}$$

or

$$\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}\big\langle\phi\big| = \big\langle\phi\big|L\,.\tag{1.2.118}$$

This differential-operator representation of the angular momentum operator acting on an azimuth bra is the analog of

$$\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\big\langle x\big| = \big\langle x\big|P\,,\tag{1.2.119}$$

Schrödinger's* relation for position bras and the operator of linear momentum. Indeed, in the context of orbital angular momentum, the correspondence $L \to \frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial\phi}$ appears in Section 4.3 of *Simple Systems*.

In closing this subject, let us note that, in addition to the X, P-type of continuous degree of freedom and the ϕ, L-type, there is also one for radial motion (position limited to positive values, corresponding momentum takes on all real values) and one for the polar angle or confinement to a finite

*Erwin Schrödinger (1887–1961)

range (position limited to a finite range but without periodic values as for the ϕ variable, and momentum takes on all real values). All of them can be obtained as suitable limits $N \to \infty$.

1.2.7 *Bohr's principle. Quantum indeterminism*

Pairs of complementary observables are such that if the value of one observable is known, all outcomes are equally probable in a measurement of the second observable. Put differently, if one observable is sharp, the other is completely undetermined. The situation is clearly an extreme case of *quantum indeterminism*. But, as extreme as it may seem, it is not at all untypical. In fact, it is the generic situation because there are always undetermined observables, irrespective of the preparation of the system.

Consider, therefore, the most general case, that is, a quantum system prepared in a state described by a statistical operator ρ; see Section 2.15 in *Basic Matters* and Section 1.6 in *Simple Systems*. We write ρ in its diagonal form,

$$\rho = \sum_{j=1}^{N} |r_j\rangle r_j \langle r_j|$$
$$\text{with} \quad r_j \geq 0\,, \quad \sum_j r_j = 1\,, \quad \langle r_j|r_k\rangle = \delta_{jk}\,. \tag{1.2.120}$$

Then define

$$|a_k\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{j=1}^{N} |r_j\rangle \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}jk} \tag{1.2.121}$$

so that

$$\langle a_k|a_l\rangle = \delta_{kl} \tag{1.2.122}$$

as we know from (1.1.28). The observable introduced by

$$A = \sum_{k=1}^{N} |a_k\rangle k \langle a_k| \tag{1.2.123}$$

has values $k = 1, 2, \ldots, N$, and all of them have probability $1/N$ because

$$\langle a_k|\rho|a_k\rangle = \sum_{j=1}^{N} r_j \underbrace{\left|\langle a_k|r_j\rangle\right|^2}_{=1/N} = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N} r_j = \frac{1}{N}\,. \tag{1.2.124}$$

Since ρ was quite arbitrary, and this construction for A is always possible, the above assertion is correct indeed:

> Irrespective of the preparation of the quantum system, there are always observables that are completely undetermined. (1.2.125)

One can regard this statement as another way of phrasing Bohr's principle of complementarity, a phrasing that emphasizes the phenomenology.

1.3 Brief review of basic dynamics

1.3.1 *Equations of motion*

Up to here, we have been reviewing quantum kinematics, that is, the description of quantum systems. Now, we turn to quantum dynamics, that is, the evolution in time of quantum systems. One basic equation is Schrödinger's equation of motion, the *Schrödinger equation*, which we state both for bras and for kets,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle \ldots, t\big| &= \big\langle \ldots, t\big|H\big(A(t),t\big)\,, \\ -\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big|\ldots, t\big\rangle &= H\big(A(t),t\big)\big|\ldots, t\big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.3.1}$$

The ellipses indicate fixed quantum numbers that identify the kets and bras, and $H\big(A(t),t\big)$ is the hermitian Hamilton* operator at time t, regarded as a function of the dynamical variables $A(t)$, pairs of complementary observables for the various degrees of freedom under consideration, and perhaps of t itself.

All other operators are of the same general form, $F = F\big(A(t),t\big)$, and obey Heisenberg's equation of motion, the *Heisenberg equation*,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}F = \frac{\partial F}{\partial t} + \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[F,H]\,, \tag{1.3.2}$$

where $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}$ differentiates t globally

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}F\big(A(t),t\big)\,, \tag{1.3.3}$$

*William Rowan Hamilton (1805–1865)

whereas $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}$ means the *parametric* time derivative only,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} F\big(A(t),t\big)\,. \qquad \text{(1.3.4)}$$

$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}$ only

Their difference

$$\left(\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} - \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\right) F\big(A(t),t\big) = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[F\big(A(t),t\big), H\big(A(t),t\big)\big] \qquad \text{(1.3.5)}$$

is the *dynamical* time derivative that originates in the dynamics of the system, including in particular the physical interactions of the constituents. Perhaps consult Chapter 3 of *Basic Matters* and Chapter 2 of *Simple Systems* if you are uncertain about these matters.

We recall that there are some special cases. First, the Hamilton operator itself has no dynamical time dependence,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} H = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} H\,, \qquad \text{(1.3.6)}$$

so that it is constant in time if there is no parametric time dependence,

$$H\big(A(t)\big) = H\big(A(t_0)\big) \quad \text{if} \quad \frac{\partial H}{\partial t} = 0\,. \qquad \text{(1.3.7)}$$

Second, the dynamical variables themselves have only a dynamical time dependence,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} A = 0\,, \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} A = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[A,H]\,. \qquad \text{(1.3.8)}$$

In particular, for position X and momentum P as the dynamical variables, we have, by virtue of (1.2.98),

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} X = \frac{\partial H}{\partial P} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} P = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial X}\,, \qquad \text{(1.3.9)}$$

which have the same form as Hamilton's equations of motion in classical mechanics.

Third, the statistical operator $\rho(A(t),t)$ has no total time dependence,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\rho = 0\,, \quad \rho\big(A(t),t\big) = \rho\big(A(t_0),t_0\big)\,. \qquad \text{(1.3.10)}$$

This is to say that the parametric t dependence of ρ compensates fully for the dynamical t dependence. Therefore, the statistical operator obeys

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho = -\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\rho, H\big]\,. \tag{1.3.11}$$

This special case of the Heisenberg equation (1.3.2) is known as the *von Neumann** *equation*. It is the quantum analog of Liouville's† equation of motion in classical statistical physics.

1.3.2 *Time transformation functions*

The descriptions at different times are related to each other by the time transformation functions, such as $\langle a, t_1|b, t_2\rangle$ for kets $|b\rangle$ at the early time t_2 and bras $\langle a|$ at the late time t_1. For example, if the state of the system is specified by the probability amplitudes $\langle b, t_2|\rangle$ at the early time t_2,

$$\big|\ \big\rangle = \sum_b \big|b, t_2\big\rangle\big\langle b, t_2\big|\ \big\rangle\,, \tag{1.3.12}$$

we find the amplitudes $\langle a, t_1|\rangle$ by means of

$$\big\langle a, t_1\big|\ \big\rangle = \sum_b \big\langle a, t_1\big|b, t_2\big\rangle\big\langle b, t_2\big|\ \big\rangle\,, \tag{1.3.13}$$

which follows from applying both sides of (1.3.12) to $\langle a, t_1|$. We can examine the evolution of any given state as soon as we know the time transformation functions.

Being conscious of the fact that all fundamental evolution equations in physics are differential equations, let us ask the following question:

> How does $\langle a, t_1|b, t_2\rangle$ change if there is a small change in the Hamilton operator at the intermediate time t? (1.3.14)

The primary effect of such a change in H at time t is on $\big\langle a', t + \mathrm{d}t\big|b', t\big\rangle$, namely (the symbol δ means a variation here, not Dirac's delta function)

$$\begin{aligned}
\delta\big\langle a', t + \mathrm{d}t\big|b', t\big\rangle &= \delta\left(\big\langle a', t\big|\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_t\,\mathrm{d}t\right)\big|b', t\big\rangle\right)\\
&= \big\langle a', t\big|\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_t\,\mathrm{d}t\right)\big|b', t\big\rangle\\
&= \big\langle a', t + \mathrm{d}t\big|\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_t\,\mathrm{d}t\right)\big|b', t\big\rangle\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{1.3.15}$$

*John (János) von Neumann (1903–1957) †Joseph Liouville (1809–1882)

where $H_t = H\big(A(t), t\big)$ for brevity and the last step recognizes that we are only dealing with terms that are of first order in the time increment $\mathrm{d}t$. Thus, the effect on

$$\big\langle a, t_1 \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle = \sum_{a', b'} \big\langle a, t_1 \big| a', t + \mathrm{d}t \big\rangle \big\langle a', t + \mathrm{d}t \big| b', t \big\rangle \big\langle b', t \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle \tag{1.3.16}$$

is

$$\begin{aligned} &\delta \big\langle a, t_1 \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle \\ &= \sum_{a', b'} \big\langle a, t_1 \big| a', t + \mathrm{d}t \big\rangle \big\langle a', t + \mathrm{d}t \big| \Big(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \delta H_t \, \mathrm{d}t \Big) \big| b', t \big\rangle \big\langle b', t \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle \\ &= \big\langle a, t_1 \big| \Big(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \delta H_t \, \mathrm{d}t \Big) \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle \,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.3.17}$$

This is the contribution of an infinitesimal change of H, an infinitesimal change of the dynamics, at the particular intermediate time t, and we get the accumulated effect of small changes at all intermediate times by integration,

$$\delta \big\langle a, t_1 \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle = \big\langle a, t_1 \big| \int_{t_2}^{t_1} \Big(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \delta H_t \, \mathrm{d}t \Big) \big| b, t_2 \big\rangle \,. \tag{1.3.18}$$

As an elementary example, let us consider the mass dependence of the time transformation function

$$\big\langle x, t_1 \big| x', t_2 \big\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i} 2\pi\hbar T}} \, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \frac{M}{2T} (x - x')^2} \,, \tag{1.3.19}$$

where $T = t_1 - t_2$ is the total duration and the underlying Hamilton operator

$$H = \frac{1}{2M} P^2 \tag{1.3.20}$$

is that of force-free motion in one dimension. We have

$$\delta_M H_t = -\frac{\delta M}{2M^2} P(t)^2 \,, \tag{1.3.21}$$

where

$$P(t) = \frac{M}{T} \Big(X(t_1) - X(t_2) \Big) = P(t_1) = P(t_2) \tag{1.3.22}$$

is constant in time (no force — no change of the momentum).

We wish to write

$$\delta_M H_t = -\frac{\delta M}{2M^2}\left(\frac{M}{T}\right)^2\Big(X(t_1)-X(t_2)\Big)^2 \tag{1.3.23}$$
$$= -\frac{\delta M}{2T^2}\Big(X(t_1)^2+X(t_2)^2-X(t_1)X(t_2)-X(t_2)X(t_1)\Big)$$

with the position operators $X(t_1), X(t_2)$ in their natural order: $X(t_1)$ on the left and $X(t_2)$ on the right so that they will stand next to their respective eigenstates, namely bra $\langle x,t_1|$ for $X(t_1)$ and ket $|x',t_2\rangle$ for $X(t_2)$. For this, we need the commutator

$$\big[X(t_1),X(t_2)\big] = \left[X(t_2)+\frac{T}{M}P(t_2),X(t_2)\right] = -\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{T}{M} \tag{1.3.24}$$

in

$$X(t_2)X(t_1) = X(t_1)X(t_2) - \big[X(t_1),X(t_2)\big]$$
$$= X(t_1)X(t_2) + \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{T}{M}\,. \tag{1.3.25}$$

Accordingly,

$$\delta_M H_t = -\frac{\delta M}{2T^2}\left(X(t_1)^2+X(t_2)^2-2X(t_1)X(t_2)-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{T}{M}\right) \tag{1.3.26}$$

and

$$\delta_M\big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle = \big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle\int_{t_2}^{t_1}\mathrm{d}t\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)\left(-\frac{\delta M}{2T^2}\right)\left((x-x')^2-\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{T}{M}\right)$$
$$= \big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{\delta M}{2T}(x-x')^2+\frac{\delta M}{2M}\right), \tag{1.3.27}$$

implying first

$$\delta_M\log\Big(\big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle\Big) = \frac{\delta_M\big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle}{\big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle}$$
$$= \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{\delta M}{2T}(x-x')^2+\frac{\delta M}{2M}$$
$$= \delta_M\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2T}(x-x')^2+\log\Big(\sqrt{M}\Big)\right) \tag{1.3.28}$$

and then

$$\big\langle x,t_1\big|x',t_2\big\rangle \propto \sqrt{M}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2T}(x-x')^2}\,, \tag{1.3.29}$$

where the proportionality factor does not depend on M. We compare this with the known form of $\langle x, t_1 | x', t_2 \rangle$ in (1.3.19) and confirm that the M dependence thus found is correct.

1.4 Schwinger's quantum action principle

In view of (1.2.98) and (1.3.1), we also know how to deal with changes of the initial and final values of x and t,

$$\begin{aligned} \delta\langle x, t_1| &= \langle x, t_1| \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\Big(P(t_1)\,\delta x - H_{t_1}\,\delta t_1\Big)\,, \\ \delta|x', t_2\rangle &= -\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\Big(P(t_2)\,\delta x' - H_{t_2}\,\delta t_2\Big)|x', t_2\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.1}$$

which we abbreviate as

$$\delta\langle x, t_1| = \langle x, t_1| \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} G_1 \tag{1.4.2}$$

and

$$\delta|x', t_2\rangle = -\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} G_2 |x', t_2\rangle\,, \tag{1.4.3}$$

where G_1, G_2 are the appropriate *generators* for infinitesimal changes of the bras and kets. Their specifc form depends on the quantum numbers that characterize the initial and final states. For example, in the case of an initial momentum ket, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \delta|p, t_2\rangle &= \left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} X(t_2)\,\delta p + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} H_{t_2}\,\delta t_2\right)|p, t_2\rangle \\ &= -\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} G_2 |p, t_2\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.4}$$

with

$$G_2 = -X(t_2)\,\delta p - H_{t_2}\,\delta t_2\,. \tag{1.4.5}$$

Quite generally, then, the response of a time transformation function to variations of both the initial and final states and the dynamics at intermediate times is

$$\delta\langle a, t_1 | b, t_2\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\langle a, t_1|\left(G_1 - G_2 - \int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t\,\delta H_t\right)|b, t_2\rangle\,. \tag{1.4.6}$$

Upon recognizing that we can derive the infinitesimal operators as variations of an *action* W_{12},

$$G_1 - G_2 - \int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t\, \delta H_t = \delta W_{12}\,, \tag{1.4.7}$$

this becomes Schwinger's *quantum action principle*

$$\delta\big\langle a, t_1\big|b, t_2\big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\big\langle a, t_1\big|\delta W_{12}\big|b, t_2\big\rangle\,. \tag{1.4.8}$$

The particular form of W_{12} depends thereby on the form of the generators G_1 and G_2 that are needed for the specified bras and kets. In particular, we have

$$W_{12} = \int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \left(P(t)\frac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}t} - H_t\right) \tag{1.4.9}$$

for

$$\delta\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\big\langle x, t_1\big|\delta W_{12}\big|x', t_2\big\rangle\,. \tag{1.4.10}$$

We verify this by a more convenient reparameterization of the t integral, essentially identical with the parameterization in Section 4.10 of *Basic Matters*, for which purpose we introduce an integration parameter τ that ranges from $\tau = 0$ to $\tau = 1$ and regard $t, X(t), P(t)$ as functions of τ,

$$\begin{aligned} \tau = 0:&\quad t(\tau) = t_2\,,\\ \tau = 1:&\quad t(\tau) = t_1\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.11}$$

where

$$\mathrm{d}t = \frac{\mathrm{d}t}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\mathrm{d}\tau = \dot{t}\,\mathrm{d}\tau \tag{1.4.12}$$

and

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}t} = \frac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\frac{\mathrm{d}\tau}{\mathrm{d}t} = \dot{X}/\dot{t} \tag{1.4.13}$$

with dots denoting τ derivatives. Then,

$$W_{12} = \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}\tau \left(P\dot{X} - \dot{t}H\right), \tag{1.4.14}$$

and variations of the "paths" $X(t), P(t)$ give

$$\delta W_{12} = \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}\tau \left(\delta P\,\dot{X} + P\,\delta\dot{X} - \delta\dot{t}\,H - \dot{t}\,\delta H\right), \tag{1.4.15}$$

where

$$\delta H = \delta H(X,P,t) = \frac{\partial H}{\partial X}\,\delta X + \delta P\,\frac{\partial H}{\partial P} + \delta t\,\frac{\partial H}{\partial t} \tag{1.4.16}$$

or, after recalling the equations of motion (1.3.9),

$$\delta H = -\frac{\mathrm{d}P}{\mathrm{d}t}\,\delta X + \delta P\,\frac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}t} + \delta t\,\frac{\partial H}{\partial t}\,. \tag{1.4.17}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\delta W_{12} = \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}\tau \Bigg(& \delta P\left(\dot X - \dot t\frac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}t}\right) + \left(P\,\delta\dot X + \dot t\,\frac{\mathrm{d}P}{\mathrm{d}t}\,\delta X\right) \\ & - \left(\delta\dot t\,H + \dot t\,\delta t\,\frac{\partial H}{\partial t}\right)\Bigg)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.18}$$

Here, the first term vanishes because $\dot t\,\dfrac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}t} = \dot X$, and we have

$$P\,\delta\dot X + \dot t\,\frac{\mathrm{d}P}{\mathrm{d}t}\,\delta X = P\,\delta\dot X + \dot P\,\delta X = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\big(P\,\delta X\big) \tag{1.4.19}$$

for the second term and

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\dot t\,H + \dot t\,\delta t\,\frac{\partial H}{\partial t} &= \delta\dot t\,H + \delta t\,\dot t\,\frac{\mathrm{d}H}{\mathrm{d}t} \\ &= \delta\dot t\,H + \delta t\,\frac{\mathrm{d}H}{\mathrm{d}\tau} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}\tau}\big(\delta t\,H\big)\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.20}$$

for the third term. Taken together they give

$$\begin{aligned}\delta W_{12} &= \big(P\,\delta X - H\,\delta t\big)\Big|_{\tau\,=\,0}^{\tau\,=\,1} \\ &= \big(P\,\delta X - H\,\delta t\big)\Big|_{t\,=\,t_2}^{t\,=\,t_1} = G_1 - G_2\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.21}$$

with

$$G = P\,\delta X - H\,\delta t\,, \tag{1.4.22}$$

the generator of (1.4.1)–(1.4.5), indeed.

In arriving at this result, we paid little attention to the order of P and $\mathrm{d}X$ or P and δX. This is justified because eventually $\delta X \to \delta x$ or $\delta x'$ so that we only need to consider variations of $X(t)$ that are multiples of the identity, and then the order of multiplication is irrelevant. One can extend the treatment to slightly more general variations, but this is not

so important for the sequel, as we shall mainly use the explicit differential statement (1.4.6).

In Sections 3.3 and 3.4 of *Simple Systems*, we have applications of the endpoint variations supplied by $G_1 - G_2$ in (1.4.6). We now supplement them by a simple example for the δH_t contribution.

1.4.1 *An example: Constant force*

As an illustrative example, we consider the motion under a constant force of strength F, for which

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}P^2 - FX \tag{1.4.23}$$

is the Hamilton operator. We already know the time transformation function $\langle x, t_1|x', t_2\rangle$ for $F = 0$, see (1.3.19), so we can get its $F \neq 0$ form by considering small changes of F. Now,

$$\delta_F H = -\delta F\, X(t) \tag{1.4.24}$$

so that

$$\delta_F\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta F\big\langle x, t_1\big|\int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t\, X(t)\big|x', t_2\big\rangle\,, \tag{1.4.25}$$

where we need $X(t)$ in terms of $X(t_1)$ and $X(t_2)$. The Heisenberg equations of motion

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}X(t) &= \frac{1}{M}P(t)\,,\\ \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P(t) &= F\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.26}$$

imply

$$X(t) = X(t_1)\frac{t - t_2}{T} + X(t_2)\frac{t_1 - t}{T} - \frac{F}{2M}(t_1 - t)(t - t_2) \tag{1.4.27}$$

as one verifies by inspection. Accordingly,

$$\begin{aligned}\delta_F\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta F\,\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle\\ \times\int_{t_2}^{t_1}\mathrm{d}t\left(x\frac{t - t_2}{T} + x'\frac{t_1 - t}{T} - \frac{F}{2M}(t_1 - t)(t - t_2)\right)\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.28}$$

or

$$\delta_F \log\Big(\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle\Big) = \frac{\delta_F\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle}{\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle} = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta F\left(\frac{x+x'}{2}T - \frac{FT^3}{12M}\right) \tag{1.4.29}$$

after making use of

$$\int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t\, \frac{t-t_2}{T} = \frac{1}{2}T = \int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t\, \frac{t_1-t}{T} \tag{1.4.30}$$

and

$$\int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t\, (t_1-t)(t-t_2) = \frac{1}{6}T^3\,. \tag{1.4.31}$$

We recognize immediately that the right-hand side of (1.4.29) is a total variation in F,

$$\delta_F \log\Big(\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle\Big) = \delta_F\left(\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{x+x'}{2}FT - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{F^2T^3}{24M}\right), \tag{1.4.32}$$

which implies

$$\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle = \big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle\Big|_{F=0}\, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{x+x'}{2}FT - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{F^2T^3}{24M}} \tag{1.4.33}$$

and we arrive at the time transformation function

$$\big\langle x, t_1\big|x', t_2\big\rangle = \sqrt{\frac{M}{\mathrm{i}2\pi\hbar T}}\, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{M}{2T}(x-x')^2 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{x+x'}{2}FT - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\frac{F^2T^3}{24M}}\,, \tag{1.4.34}$$

in agreement with the result of Exercise 44 in *Simple Systems*.

1.4.2 *Insertion: Varying an exponential function*

As a preparation for the sequel, we derive an important mathematical formula for the response of e^A to infinitesimal variations of the operator A. Begin with

$$\delta\,\mathrm{e}^A = \delta\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}A^k = \delta\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{k!}A^k = \delta\sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{(k+1)!}A^{k+1} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty}\frac{1}{(k+1)!}\delta A^{k+1}\,, \tag{1.4.35}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\delta A^{k+1} &= \delta A\, A^k + A\,\delta A\, A^{k-1} + A^2\,\delta A\, A^{k-2} + \cdots + A^k\,\delta A \\ &= \sum_{j=0}^{k} A^j\,\delta A\, A^{k-j}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.36}$$

Therefore,

$$\delta\,\mathrm{e}^A = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(k+1)!} \sum_{j=0}^{k} A^j\,\delta A\, A^{k-j} \tag{1.4.37}$$

or

$$\delta\,\mathrm{e}^A = \sum_{j,k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(j+k+1)!} A^j\,\delta A\, A^k \tag{1.4.38}$$

after rearranging the double sum. With Euler's* *beta function integral*,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{j!\,k!}{(j+k+1)!} &= \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x\, x^j (1-x)^k \\ &= \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x\, (1-x)^j x^k\,, \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.39}$$

this becomes

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\,\mathrm{e}^A &= \sum_{j,k=0}^{\infty} \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x\, x^j (1-x)^k \frac{A^j}{j!}\,\delta A\,\frac{A^k}{k!} \\ &= \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} \frac{(xA)^j}{j!}\,\delta A \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{\big((1-x)A\big)^k}{k!} \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.40}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\,\mathrm{e}^A &= \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x\; \mathrm{e}^{xA}\,\delta A\; \mathrm{e}^{(1-x)A} \\ &= \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x\; \mathrm{e}^{(1-x)A}\,\delta A\; \mathrm{e}^{xA}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{1.4.41}$$

This formula for the variation of an exponential operator function is worth memorizing. It contains all of perturbation theory *in nuce*.

*Leonhard Euler (1707–1783)

1.4.3 *Time-independent Hamilton operator*

As an application of (1.4.41), which shows the connection with the quantum action principle, we consider the situation of a time-independent Hamilton operator, that is,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}H\big(A(t),t\big)=0 \quad \text{implying} \quad H=H\big(A(t)\big)=H_t \tag{1.4.42}$$

so that $\dfrac{\partial H}{\partial t}=0$ and $H_t=H_{t_1}=H_{t_2}$. Then,

$$\big\langle a,t_1\big|=\big\langle a,t_2\big|\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}(t_1-t_2)/\hbar} \tag{1.4.43}$$

and, for variations of the Hamilton operator only,

$$\delta\big\langle a,t_1\big|b,t_2\big\rangle=\big\langle a,t_2\big|\Big(\delta\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar}\Big)\big|b,t_2\big\rangle \tag{1.4.44}$$

with $T=t_1-t_2$ as always. Here, we meet

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar}=\int_0^1\mathrm{d}x\;\mathrm{e}^{(1-x)(-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar)}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_{t_2}T\right)\\ \times\;\mathrm{e}^{x(-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar)}\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.45}$$

or with $xT=t-t_2$, $(1-x)T=t_1-t$, $\mathrm{d}x\,T=\mathrm{d}t$,

$$\delta\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar}=\int_{t_2}^{t_1}\mathrm{d}t\;\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_{t_2}(t_1-t)}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_{t_2}\right)\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_{t_2}(t-t_2)}\,. \tag{1.4.46}$$

The unitary operator on the far right, $\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_{t_2}(t-t_2)}$, advances states and operators from time t_2 to time t so that

$$\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_{t_2}(t-t_2)}\delta H_{t_2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_{t_2}(t-t_2)}=\delta H_t \tag{1.4.47}$$

and, therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\delta\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar}&=\int_{t_2}^{t_1}\mathrm{d}t\;\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}(t_1-t_2)/\hbar}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_t\right)\\ &=\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar}\int_{t_2}^{t_1}\mathrm{d}t\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_t\right).\end{aligned} \tag{1.4.48}$$

It follows that

$$\delta\big\langle a,t_1\big|b,t_2\big\rangle=\big\langle a,t_2\big|\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_{t_2}T/\hbar}\int_{t_2}^{t_1}\mathrm{d}t\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_t\right)\big|b,t_2\big\rangle \tag{1.4.49}$$

or

$$\delta\big\langle a, t_1\big|b, t_2\big\rangle = \big\langle a, t_1\big| \int_{t_2}^{t_1} \mathrm{d}t \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\delta H_t\right)\big|b, t_2\big\rangle\,, \tag{1.4.50}$$

which is exactly what the quantum action principle tells us about variations of the dynamics at intermediate times.

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 2

Time-Dependent Perturbations

2.1 Born series

As another application of (1.4.41), we now consider the typical situation of a small perturbation, that is,

$$H = H_0 + H_1\,, \quad \frac{\partial H}{\partial t} = 0\,, \tag{2.1.1}$$

where H_0 is the dominating part that governs the evolution mostly and H_1 is a perturbation that is small in some sense. It should then be a good approximation to take H_1 only into account to first, or perhaps second, order.

We regard the *unitary evolution operator*

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0 + \lambda H_1)T/\hbar}\,, \tag{2.1.2}$$

where $\lambda = 1$, as a formal function of λ, which we expand in powers of λ,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar} = {} & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0T/\hbar} \\ & + \lambda\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\lambda}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0 + \lambda H_1)T/\hbar}\bigg|_{\lambda\,=\,0}\right) \\ & + \frac{1}{2}\lambda^2\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\lambda^2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0 + \lambda H_1)T/\hbar}\bigg|_{\lambda\,=\,0}\right) \\ & + \cdots\end{aligned} \tag{2.1.3}$$

with $\lambda = 1$ eventually. So, we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar} = \Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\Big)_0 + \Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\Big)_1 + \Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\Big)_2 + \cdots \tag{2.1.4}$$

with the terms to zeroth, first, and second order identified in (2.1.3),

$$\begin{aligned}
\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\right)_0 &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0T/\hbar}\,,\\
\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\right)_1 &= \frac{\partial}{\partial\lambda}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0+\lambda H_1)T/\hbar}\bigg|_{\lambda=0}\,,\\
\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\right)_2 &= \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial\lambda}\right)^2 \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0+\lambda H_1)T/\hbar}\bigg|_{\lambda=0}\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.1.5}$$

This is an expansion of $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}$ in powers of H_1 because λ and H_1 always appear together.

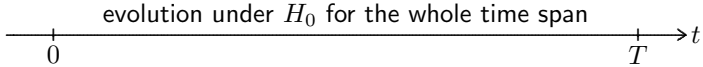
The λ derivative of $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0+\lambda H_1)T/\hbar}$ is available as an application of (1.4.41) or the identity in Exercise 28,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial}{\partial\lambda}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0+\lambda H_1)T/\hbar} = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t_1\,\mathrm{d}t_2\,\delta(t_1+t_2-T)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0+\lambda H_1)t_1/\hbar}\\
\times\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_1\right)\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0+\lambda H_1)t_2/\hbar}\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{2.1.6}$$

and setting $\lambda = 0$ yields

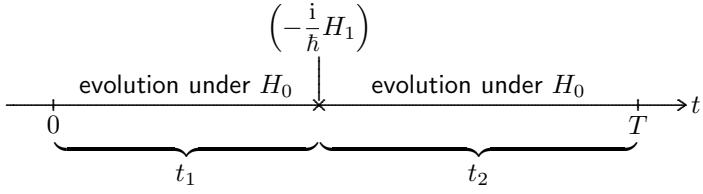
$$\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\right)_1 = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t_1\,\mathrm{d}t_2\,\delta(t_1+t_2-T)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0t_1/\hbar}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_1\right)\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0t_2/\hbar}\,. \tag{2.1.7}$$

Graphically, we can represent the zeroth-order term by a straight line from $t = 0$ to $t = T$,



(2.1.8)

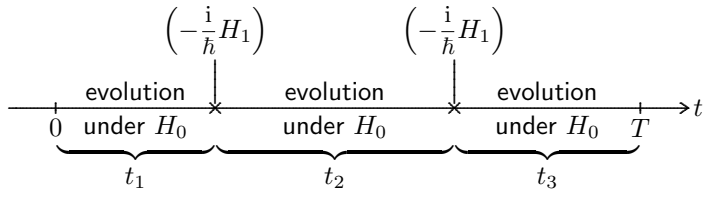
and the first-order term is



(2.1.9)

whereby the $\delta(t_1 + t_2 - T)$ factor in (2.1.7) enforces $t_1 + t_2 = T$.

The second-order term is expected to give



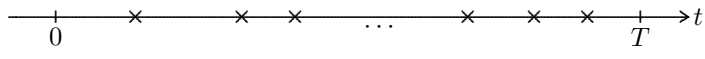
(2.1.10)

corresponding to

$$\left(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar}\right)_2 = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t_1\,\mathrm{d}t_2\,\mathrm{d}t_3\,\delta(t_1+t_2+t_3-T)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0t_1/\hbar}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_1\right) \times \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0t_2/\hbar}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_1\right)\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0t_3/\hbar}, \quad (2.1.11)$$

where $T = t_1 + t_2 + t_3$ is broken up into three intervals of evolution under H_0 with two applications of H_1 between these periods; Exercise 34 deals with this.

We can continue like this and get the third-order, fourth-order, fifth-order, ... terms but, even without going through the technical steps, it is clear what we will get eventually. Namely, the terms have this structure:



(2.1.12)

with, for the nth-order term, n applications of $\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}H_1\right)$ and $n+1$ intervals of evolution under H_0.

We have here, in (2.1.4) and (2.1.5) with (2.1.7) and (2.1.11), the first example of a *Born* series*, for which we shall meet other examples in Sections 2.2, 2.8, and 3.4.2. We regard as the defining property of a Born series that the successive terms have the structure exemplified by (2.1.7) and (2.1.11), which can be represented graphically as in (2.1.8)–(2.1.10) and (2.1.12).

2.2 Scattering operator

We exhibit the difference between the unitary evolution operator for H_0,

$$U_0(T) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}H_0T/\hbar}, \quad (2.2.1)$$

*Max Born (1882–1970)

and the one for $H = H_0 + H_1$,

$$U(T) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}HT/\hbar} = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(H_0 + H_1)T/\hbar}\,, \tag{2.2.2}$$

by introducing the *scattering operator* $S(T)$,

$$U(T) = U_0(T)S(T)\,. \tag{2.2.3}$$

When $H_1 = 0$, we have $S(T) = 1$, of course, so that $S(T)$ summarizes the net effect of H_1 in the sense that $S(T)$ accounts for the change in the evolution that originates in H_1. The unperturbed evolution governed by H_0 is put aside by extracting the factor $U_0(T)$ out of $U(T)$.

The name "scattering operator" alludes to a frequent application, namely in scattering theory. Generally speaking, the system evolving under $H = H_0 + H_1$ is perturbed by H_1 and, therefore, does not follow the trajectory laid out by H_0. Rather it is "scattered" off that path by the action of H_1. It should be clear that systematic expansions in powers of H_1, such as the Born series, have as a prerequisite the requirement that H_1 is small.

The zeroth-order term in (2.1.5) is $U_0(T)$, and the Born series for $U(T)$ is (2.1.4), whereby the exponential factors on the right-hand sides of (2.1.7) and (2.1.11) are $U_0(t)$ at various intermediates times t. Accordingly, the Born series for $U(T)$ can be converted into a corresponding series for $S(T)$,

$$\begin{aligned} S(T) &= U_0(T)^{-1}U(T) = U_0(-T)U(T) \\ &= U_0(-T)\biggl(U_0(T) - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, U_0(T-t)H_1U_0(t) \\ &\quad + \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\, U_0(T-t)H_1U_0(t-t')H_1U_0(t') + \cdots\biggr) \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.4}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} S(T) = 1 &- \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, U_0(-t)H_1U_0(t) \\ &+ \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\, U_0(-t)H_1U_0(t)U_0(-t')H_1U_0(t') \\ &+ \cdots\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.5}$$

after we made use of the unitary property $U_0(T)^{-1} = U_0(T)^\dagger = U_0(-T)$ and the group property $U_0(t_1 + t_2) = U_0(t_1)U_0(t_2)$. All H_1 appearing here

are sandwiched by a $U_0(-t), U_0(t)$ pair of evolution operators, which invites us to introduce

$$\overline{H_1}(t) = U_0(-t) H_1 U_0(t) \tag{2.2.6}$$

as a convenient abbreviation. This is often referred to as "H_1 in the interaction picture" and so be it, but since the standard notions of "Schrödinger picture," "Heisenberg picture," and "interaction picture," sometimes also called "Dirac picture," are more confusing than enlightening, we shall not employ such terminology.

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} S(T) = 1 &- \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t) \\ &+ \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t) \overline{H_1}(t') + \cdots \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.7}$$

is the Born series for the scattering operator, whereby the kth term would have k factors of $\overline{H_1}(t)$ with different time arguments such that the $\overline{H_1}$ operators for later times stand to the left of the ones for earlier times; more about this in Section 2.3.

We note that the Born series has a self-repeating pattern,

$$\begin{aligned} S(T) = 1 &- \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t) \\ &\times \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t') \right. \\ &\left. + \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t' \int_0^{t'} \mathrm{d}t''\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t'') + \cdots \right), \end{aligned} \tag{2.2.8}$$

where the series in the largest pair of parentheses is the Born series again, for $S(t)$,

$$\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t') + \cdots \right) = S(t)\,. \tag{2.2.9}$$

As a consequence, we have an integral equation for the scattering operator $S(T)$,

$$S(T) = 1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar} \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t) S(t)\,, \tag{2.2.10}$$

which has a structure that is met rather often in perturbation theory: the structure of a *Lippmann** *–Schwinger equation.* It can be used for systematic iterations in the form

$$S_{n+1}(T) = 1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t) S_n(t)\,, \tag{2.2.11}$$

where, it is hoped, S_{n+1} is an improvement over S_n and $S_n \to S$ as $n \to \infty$.

2.3 Dyson series

The second-order term in the Born series (2.2.7) for the scattering operator,

$$\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\,, \tag{2.3.1}$$

can also be written as

$$\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t' \int_0^{t'} \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t) = \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_t^T \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t) \tag{2.3.2}$$

upon interchanging the integration variables $t \leftrightarrow t'$. We combine them into half the sum of both,

$$\frac{1}{2}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t' \left[\overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\right]\Big|_{\substack{\text{later time to the left} \\ \text{of the earlier time}}}, \tag{2.3.3}$$

where we have this instruction about the *time ordering.* We write $\left[\cdots\right]_>$ for such a time-ordered product of $\overline{H_1}$ factors, as illustrated by

$$\left[\overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\right]_> = \begin{cases} \overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t') & \text{if} \quad t > t'\,, \\ \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t) & \text{if} \quad t' > t\,, \end{cases} \tag{2.3.4}$$

for two factors as above, and by

$$\left[\overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t'')\right]_> = \begin{cases} \overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t'') & \text{if} \quad t > t' > t''\,, \\ \overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t'')\, \overline{H_1}(t') & \text{if} \quad t > t'' > t'\,, \\ \qquad\qquad \vdots & \\ \overline{H_1}(t'')\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t) & \text{if} \quad t'' > t' > t\,, \end{cases} \tag{2.3.5}$$

*Bernard Abram LIPPMANN (1915–1988)

for three factors, with altogether $6 = 3!$ arrangements. So, the third-order term in the Born series is

$$\begin{aligned}&\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^3 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t' \int_0^{t'} \mathrm{d}t''\, \overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t'') \\ &= \frac{1}{3!}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^3 \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t' \int_0^T \mathrm{d}t''\, \Big[\overline{H_1}(t)\, \overline{H_1}(t')\, \overline{H_1}(t'')\Big]_> \end{aligned} \tag{2.3.6}$$

for which

$$\frac{1}{3!}\left[\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t)\right)^3\right]_> \tag{2.3.7}$$

is a suggestive, compact notation. Likewise, we get

$$\frac{1}{k!}\left[\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t)\right)^k\right]_> \tag{2.3.8}$$

for the kth-order term, and then

$$\begin{aligned} S(T) &= \left[\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t)\right)^k\right]_> \\ &= \left[\exp\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\, \overline{H_1}(t)\right)\right]_> \end{aligned} \tag{2.3.9}$$

is a *formal* summation of the Born series in terms of a time-ordered exponential function. Of course, this is just a compact way of writing the original Born series (2.2.7), but nevertheless it represents a very important advance of the formalism because many formal manipulations are facilitated much by this notation. One refers to this version of the Born series as the *Dyson** *series*.

2.4 Fermi's golden rule

A typical question is the following: Given that the system is initially in an eigenstate of H_0, what is the chance that H_1 will effect a transition to another eigenstate of H_0? The answer is given, under general and typical circumstances, by what is arguably the most famous and most frequently

*Freeman John Dyson (1923–2020)

applied statement of perturbation theory: Fermi's* celebrated *golden rule*. It is an application of the Born series, or the Dyson series, to the lowest order, that is, first order, in the perturbation H_1.

Thus, we have eigenket an $|n\rangle$ of H_0 initially,

$$H_0\big|n\big\rangle = \big|n\big\rangle E_n \,, \tag{2.4.1}$$

and the eigenbra $\langle m|$ of H_0 finally,

$$\big\langle m\big|H_0 = E_m\big\langle m\big| \,. \tag{2.4.2}$$

The transition probability is

$$\begin{aligned} \Big|\big\langle m\big|U(T)\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 &= \Big|\big\langle m\big|U_0(T)S(T)\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 \\ &= \Big|\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}E_mT}\big\langle m\big|S(T)\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 \\ &= \Big|\big\langle m\big|S(T)\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 , \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.3}$$

where, to the first order in H_1,

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle m\big|S(T)\big|n\big\rangle &\cong \big\langle m\Big|\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\,\overline{H_1}(t)\right)\big|n\big\rangle \\ &= \delta_{mn} - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\,\big\langle m\big|\overline{H_1}(t)\big|n\big\rangle \,. \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.4}$$

Now, we have a *transition* in mind so that the final state is different from the initial state, $m \neq n$, implying $\delta_{mn} \to 0$. Further, recall how $\overline{H_1}(t)$ is related to H_1 through the sandwiching with $U_0(-t)$ and $U_0(t)$,

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle m\big|\overline{H_1}(t)\big|n\big\rangle &= \big\langle m\big|U_0(-t)H_1U_0(t)\big|n\big\rangle \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}E_mt}\big\langle m\big|H_1\big|n\big\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}E_nt} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(E_m\,-\,E_n)t}\big\langle m\big|H_1\big|n\big\rangle \,. \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.5}$$

Accordingly,

$$\begin{aligned} \Big|\big\langle m\big|U(T)\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 &\cong \Big|-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\big\langle m\big|H_1\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 \left|\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\;\mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(E_m\,-\,E_n)t}\right|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\Big|\big\langle m\big|H_1\big|n\big\rangle\Big|^2 \left|\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\;\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\right|^2 , \end{aligned} \tag{2.4.6}$$

*Enrico FERMI (1901–1954)

where

$$\omega = \frac{1}{\hbar}(E_n - E_m) \tag{2.4.7}$$

is the *transition frequency*, the energy difference (of the eigenstates of H_0, not of H!) expressed as a circular frequency. The integral is

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^T \mathrm{d}t\ \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t} &= \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega T} - 1}{-\mathrm{i}\omega} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega T/2}\frac{2}{\omega}\sin\left(\frac{\omega T}{2}\right),\end{aligned} \tag{2.4.8}$$

where the first factor has unit modulus so that

$$\left|\langle m|U(T)|n\rangle\right|^2 \cong \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\left|\langle m|H_1|n\rangle\right|^2 \frac{4}{\omega^2}\sin\left(\frac{\omega T}{2}\right)^2. \tag{2.4.9}$$

Before proceeding, we must think a bit about the situation we are envisioning. The Hamilton operator $H = H_0 + H_1$ is dominated by H_0 and we take the small perturbation into account only to the lowest order. Therefore, consistency requires that we stick to time scales that are long on the scale set by the H_0 transition frequency ω but not long in an absolute sense, $T \not\to \infty$. In short, while $\omega T \gg 1$, the duration T is a finite time so small that the net effect of H_1 is still small, which is to say that the probability of the transition $n \to m$ is a small number. It should, therefore, be possible to speak of a *transition rate* γ,

$$\left|\langle m|U(T)|n\rangle\right|^2 \cong \gamma T \ll 1\,. \tag{2.4.10}$$

We are thus asked to identify the regime in which $\left|\langle m|U(T)|n\rangle\right|^2$ grows linearly with time T. This is *not* the regime of very short times because we know (see Section 5.1.3 in *Basic Matters*) that the persistence probability deviates by an amount $\propto T^2$ from unity when the elapsed time T is small,

$$\underbrace{\left|\langle n|U(T)|n\rangle\right|^2}_{\substack{\text{same state}\\ \text{initially and finally}}} \cong 1 - \left(\frac{T}{\hbar}\delta H\right)^2 \quad \text{for very small } T\,, \tag{2.4.11}$$

implying that $\left|\langle m|U(T)|n\rangle\right|^2 \propto T^2$ for $n \neq m$. The energy spread δH that appears here is the spread of $H = H_0 + H_1$,

$$\delta H = \sqrt{\langle n|H^2|n\rangle - \langle n|H|n\rangle^2}\,, \tag{2.4.12}$$

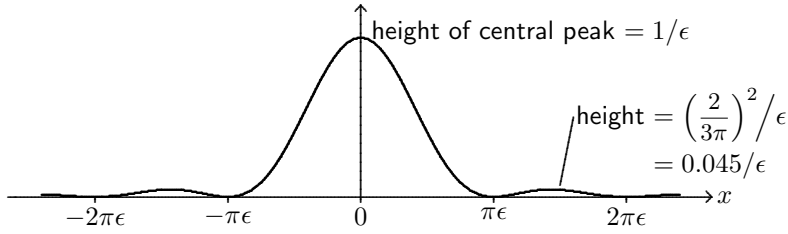
but since $|n\rangle$ is an eigenket of H_0, it is also the spread of H_1,

$$\delta H = \delta H_1 = \sqrt{\langle n|H_1^2|n\rangle - \langle n|H_1|n\rangle^2}\,. \tag{2.4.13}$$

In summary, it is $\omega T \gg 1$ that we must consider more closely. We note a mathematical fact, namely

$$\frac{\sin(x/\epsilon)^2}{x^2/\epsilon} \to \pi\delta(x) \quad \text{for } 0 < \epsilon \to 0\,, \tag{2.4.14}$$

for which we give the usual plausibility argument. A plot of $\frac{\sin(x/\epsilon)^2}{x^2/\epsilon}$ has this general appearance:



(2.4.15)

As $\epsilon \to 0$, the central peak only has area worth speaking of, and it is a very narrow, very tall peak. The area is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\sin(x/\epsilon)^2}{x^2/\epsilon} = \pi \tag{2.4.16}$$

as one shows easily by an integration by parts that turns this integral into the well-known integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{d}x\, \frac{\sin(x)}{x} = \pi\,. \tag{2.4.17}$$

Actually, there is a swindle in this argument because the area of the central peak is 90.3% of the total area, independent of ϵ, that of the first side peaks (on both sides) is 4.7%, and the second side peaks have 1.7% of the area. A better argument would thus exploit that, as $\epsilon \to 0$, the region near $x = 0$ contains more and more peaks and the total area grows to unity for any fixed interval around $x = 0$. Exercise 41 justifies (2.4.14) by a systematic procedure.

Having thus established (2.4.14), we now apply it to

$$\epsilon = \frac{2}{T} \quad \text{and} \quad x = \omega\,, \tag{2.4.18}$$

meaning

$$\frac{4}{\omega^2}\sin\!\left(\frac{\omega T}{2}\right)^2 = 2T\frac{\sin\bigl(\omega T/2\bigr)^2}{\omega^2 T/2} \cong 2\pi T\delta(\omega) \quad \text{for large } T\,. \tag{2.4.19}$$

The transition probability is, therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|U(T)\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2 &\cong \frac{1}{\hbar^2}\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2 2\pi T\delta(\omega)\\ &= \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2 \frac{1}{\hbar}\delta\!\left(\frac{E_n-E_m}{\hbar}\right)T\\ &= \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2 \delta(E_n-E_m)T\,,\end{aligned} \tag{2.4.20}$$

and the transition rate γ of (2.4.10) is then

$$\gamma_{m\leftarrow n} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2 \delta(E_n-E_m)\,. \tag{2.4.21}$$

This is Fermi's *golden rule*.

It is important to realize that the rate depends on both the initial and the final state, which we emphasize by writing $\gamma_{m\leftarrow n}$. But, in the typical situation in which this applies, there are many final states that we cannot usually distinguish from each other. Say, for instance, we talk about an atom that emits a photon, thereby undergoing a transition from an excited to a ground state. The photon is emitted into a range of frequencies and into many directions. Then, there are a lot of final states, all with the same final energy $E' = E_m$ but many different values for the quantum numbers symbolized by subscript m. We must average $\bigl|\langle m|H_1|n\rangle\bigr|^2$ over all those states,

$$\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2 \longrightarrow \overline{\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2}\,, \tag{2.4.22}$$

and multiply by the density $\rho(E')$ of the final states, followed by integrating over E'. Together, this gives the transition rate

$$\begin{aligned}\gamma &= \int \mathrm{d}E'\,\rho(E')\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\,\overline{\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2}\,\delta(E_n-E')\\ &= \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\,\overline{\Bigl|\bigl\langle m\bigl|H_1\bigr|n\bigr\rangle\Bigr|^2}\,\rho(E_n)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{2.4.23}$$

The averaging $\overline{\langle\cdots\rangle^2}$ is, as said above, over all final states with $E' = E_m$ ($= E_n$ by virtue of the delta function), and $\rho(E)$ is the density of these

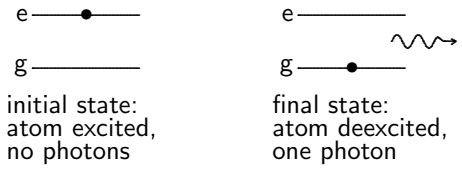
final states, normalized in accordance with

$$\int \mathrm{d}E'\, \rho(E') = 1\,. \tag{2.4.24}$$

2.5 Photon emission by a "two-level atom"

2.5.1 *Golden-rule treatment*

As an application of the golden rule, let us consider a simplified model of an atom emitting a photon. We reduce the atom to two energetic levels, the excited state $|\mathrm{e}\rangle$ and the ground state $|\mathrm{g}\rangle$, which are just the two atomic states involved in the transition:



(2.5.1)

For the description of the atom, we use the transition operators

$$\sigma = \big|\mathrm{g}\big\rangle\big\langle\mathrm{e}\big|\,, \quad \sigma^\dagger = \big|\mathrm{e}\big\rangle\big\langle\mathrm{g}\big|\,, \tag{2.5.2}$$

whose products are the projectors on the atomic states,

$$\sigma^\dagger\sigma = \big|\mathrm{e}\big\rangle\big\langle\mathrm{e}\big|\,, \quad \sigma\sigma^\dagger = \big|\mathrm{g}\big\rangle\big\langle\mathrm{g}\big|\,. \tag{2.5.3}$$

Upon assigning energy $\hbar\omega$ to the excited state and energy 0 to the ground state, we thus have

$$H_{\mathrm{atom}} = \hbar\omega\sigma^\dagger\sigma \tag{2.5.4}$$

for the atom Hamilton operator.

The photons are a collection of harmonic oscillators with energy steps of $\hbar\omega_\nu$ for the νth oscillator, that is, the νth kind of photon, and oscillator ladder operators $A_\nu, A_\nu^\dagger$, one for each photon kind. The label ν stands for all characterizing properties of the νth kind, such as propagation direction and polarization. Then,

$$H_{\mathrm{phot}} = \sum_\nu \hbar\omega_\nu A_\nu^\dagger A_\nu \tag{2.5.5}$$

is the photon part of the Hamilton operator.

The interaction is modeled in the simplest form, namely by just assuming the obvious: when the atom undergoes e → g, one photon is emitted, and the transition g → e is accompanied by the absorption of one photon. The basic operators are, therefore,

$$\sigma A_\nu^\dagger \quad \text{for} \quad \begin{array}{l}\text{transition e} \to \text{g} \\ \text{and photon emitted}\end{array} \tag{2.5.6}$$

and

$$\sigma^\dagger A_\nu \quad \text{for} \quad \begin{array}{l}\text{transition g} \to \text{e} \\ \text{and photon absorbed,}\end{array} \tag{2.5.7}$$

when $\sigma A_\nu^\dagger$ and $\sigma^\dagger A_\nu$ act on kets. The strength of these processes is measured by the so-called Rabi* frequencies Ω_ν so that

$$H_{\text{int}} = -\sum_\nu \hbar\big(\Omega_\nu \sigma A_\nu^\dagger + \Omega_\nu^* \sigma^\dagger A_\nu\big) \tag{2.5.8}$$

is the interaction part of the Hamilton operator. The overall minus sign is conventional and of no physical significance.

Taken together, we have

$$\begin{aligned} H &= H_{\text{atom}} + H_{\text{phot}} + H_{\text{int}} \\ &= \underbrace{\hbar\omega\sigma^\dagger\sigma + \sum_\nu \hbar\omega_\nu A_\nu^\dagger A_\nu}_{=H_0} \underbrace{- \sum_\nu \hbar\big(\Omega_\nu \sigma A_\nu^\dagger + \Omega_\nu^* \sigma^\dagger A_\nu\big)}_{=H_1} \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.9}$$

so that the eigenstates of H_0 are

$$\begin{aligned} \big|n\big\rangle &\mathrel{\widehat{=}} \big|\text{e}, 0\big\rangle \quad \text{initially: atom excited, no photons,} \\ \big\langle m\big| &\mathrel{\widehat{=}} \big\langle \text{g}, 1_\nu\big| \quad \text{finally: atom deexcited, one photon of kind } \nu. \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.10}$$

According to Fermi's golden rule, we thus have

$$\gamma_\nu = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\Big|\big\langle \text{g}, 1_\nu\big|H_{\text{int}}\big|\text{e}, 0\big\rangle\Big|^2 \delta(\hbar\omega - \hbar\omega_\nu) \tag{2.5.11}$$

for the partial rate that goes with the emission of a photon of the νth kind. The argument of the delta function is the difference of the H_0 eigenvalues, namely $\hbar\omega$ for $|\text{e}, 0\rangle$ and $\hbar\omega_\nu$ for $\langle \text{g}, 1_\nu|$. The evaluation of

$$\begin{aligned} \big\langle \text{g}, 1_\nu\big|H_{\text{int}}\big|\text{e}, 0\big\rangle &= -\hbar \sum_{\nu'} \big\langle \text{g}, 1_\nu\big|\Big(\Omega_{\nu'} \sigma A_{\nu'}^\dagger + \Omega_{\nu'}^* \sigma^\dagger A_{\nu'}\Big)\big|\text{e}, 0\big\rangle \\ &= -\hbar\Omega_\nu \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.12}$$

*Isidor Isaac Rabi (1898–1988)

is straightforward because $\langle \mathrm{g}|\sigma^\dagger = 0$ and

$$\left\langle \mathrm{g}, 1_\nu \right| \sigma A^\dagger_{\nu'} = \delta_{\nu\nu'} \left\langle \mathrm{e}, 0 \right| , \tag{2.5.13}$$

and there is only a single term contributing to the sum in (2.5.12). It follows that

$$\gamma_\nu = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar} \left| \hbar\Omega_\nu \right|^2 \frac{1}{\hbar} \delta(\omega - \omega_\nu) = 2\pi \left| \Omega_\nu \right|^2 \delta(\omega - \omega_\nu) . \tag{2.5.14}$$

Next, we note that there are many photon kinds with the same frequency $\omega = \omega_\nu$, differing only in their polarization and propagation directions. For the given frequency ω_ν, we average over those other attributes,

$$\left| \Omega_\nu \right|^2 \longrightarrow \overline{\left| \Omega_\nu \right|^2} \Big|_{\substack{\text{average over all} \\ \text{modes with } \omega_\nu = \omega'}} , \tag{2.5.15}$$

and multiply with the density $\rho(\omega')$ of photon modes ("mode" means "kind of photon" as labeled by ν). Then,

$$\gamma = \int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, 2\pi \, \overline{\left| \Omega_\nu \right|^2} \, \delta(\omega - \omega') \rho(\omega') = 2\pi f(\omega) \tag{2.5.16}$$

is the resulting expression for the transition rate, where

$$f(\omega') = \rho(\omega') \; \overline{\left| \Omega_\nu \right|^2} \Big|_{\text{av. for } \omega_\nu = \omega'} \tag{2.5.17}$$

summarizes the essential atomic properties specified by the Rabi frequencies Ω_ν and the relevant properties of the electromagnetic radiation field specified by the mode density $\rho(\omega')$. The former is to be derived in atomic theory and the latter in electromagnetic theory. For the purpose of this discussion, we take for granted that $f(\omega')$ is a known function of ω'.

2.5.2 *A more detailed treatment*

The golden rule gives us the transition rate $\gamma = 2\pi f(\omega)$ but hardly any other detail. So, let us try to do better and, following Weisskopf* and Wigner,† attempt to solve the Schrödinger equation.

We begin with writing the state ket as a superposition of $|\mathrm{e}, 0\rangle$ and $|\mathrm{g}, 1_\nu\rangle$ at time t,

$$\left| \; \right\rangle = \left| \mathrm{e}, 0, t \right\rangle \alpha(t) + \sum_\nu \left| \mathrm{g}, 1_\nu, t \right\rangle \beta_\nu(t) , \tag{2.5.18}$$

*Victor Frederick WEISSKOPF (1908–2002)
†Eugene Paul (Jenő Pál) WIGNER (1902–1995)

with probability amplitudes

$$\alpha(t) = \big\langle \mathrm{e}, 0, t \big| \,\big\rangle\,,$$
$$\beta_\nu(t) = \big\langle \mathrm{g}, 1_\nu, t \big| \,\big\rangle\,. \tag{2.5.19}$$

They obey their respective Schrödinger equations,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\alpha(t) = \big\langle \mathrm{e}, 0, t\big|H\big| \,\big\rangle = \hbar\omega\big\langle \mathrm{e}, 0, t\big| \,\big\rangle - \hbar\sum_\nu \Omega_\nu^*\big\langle \mathrm{g}, 1_\nu, t\big| \,\big\rangle$$
$$= \hbar\omega\alpha(t) - \hbar\sum_\nu \Omega_\nu^*\beta_\nu(t) \tag{2.5.20}$$

and

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\beta_\nu(t) = \big\langle \mathrm{g}, 1_\nu, t\big|H\big| \,\big\rangle = \hbar\omega_\nu\big\langle \mathrm{g}, 1_\nu, t\big| \,\big\rangle - \hbar\Omega_\nu\big\langle \mathrm{e}, 0, t\big| \,\big\rangle$$
$$= \hbar\omega_\nu\beta_\nu(t) - \hbar\Omega_\nu\alpha(t)\,, \tag{2.5.21}$$

or, after removing the common factor of $\hbar$,

$$\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\alpha(t) = \omega\alpha(t) - \sum_\nu \Omega_\nu^*\beta_\nu(t)\,,$$
$$\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\beta_\nu(t) = \omega_\nu\beta_\nu(t) - \Omega_\nu\alpha(t)\,. \tag{2.5.22}$$

This is a coupled system of very many equations as there are very many photon modes. We have to solve it subject to the initial conditions

$$\alpha(0) = 1\,, \quad \beta_\nu(0) = 0\,, \tag{2.5.23}$$

corresponding to the situation of "atom excited, no photon at $t = 0$." In the course of time, $\alpha(t)$ will decrease and $\beta_\nu(0)$ will increase but the total probability remains fixed at 100%, of course,

$$\underbrace{\big|\alpha(t)\big|^2}_{\substack{\text{probability}\\ \text{of } |\mathrm{e},0\rangle\\ \text{at time } t}} + \sum_\nu \underbrace{\big|\beta_\nu(t)\big|^2}_{\substack{\text{probability}\\ \text{of } |\mathrm{g},1_\nu\rangle\\ \text{at time } t}} = 1\,, \tag{2.5.24}$$

as one verifies easily.

We can express $\beta_\nu(t)$ in terms of $\alpha(t)$ by solving the β_ν equation formally, beginning with

$$\left(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \omega_\nu\right)\beta_\nu(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t}\,\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t}\beta_\nu(t)\Big) = -\Omega_\nu\alpha(t) \tag{2.5.25}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t}\beta_\nu(t)\Big) = \mathrm{i}\Omega_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t}\alpha(t)\,, \tag{2.5.26}$$

leading to

$$\beta_\nu(t) = \mathrm{i}\Omega_\nu \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\;\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t')}\alpha(t')\,, \tag{2.5.27}$$

where $\beta_\nu(0) = 0$ is taken into account. We use this in the α equation of (2.5.22) for the elimination of the β_ν:

$$\begin{aligned}\Big(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \omega\Big)\alpha(t) = {}& \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big) = -\sum_\nu \Omega_\nu^*\beta_\nu(t) \\ = {}& -\mathrm{i}\sum_\nu \big|\,\Omega_\nu\,\big|^2 \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\;\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t')}\alpha(t')\,. \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.28}$$

It will be convenient to exhibit the product $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\,$,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big) = -\sum_\nu \big|\,\Omega_\nu\,\big|^2 \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega\,-\,\omega_\nu)(t\,-\,t')}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t'}\alpha(t')\Big)\,, \tag{2.5.29}$$

because we expect that $\alpha(t)$ is dominated by its natural oscillation with frequency ω, with a modification that results from the interaction part of the Hamilton operator. Indeed, if there were no interaction, that is, all $\Omega_\nu = 0$, the right-hand side would vanish.

On physical grounds, we expect that $\alpha(t)$ obeys an exponential decay law, at least approximately and for the long, but not extremely long, times beyond the initial $\propto t^2$ decay period. Therefore, we try the *ansatz*

$$\alpha(t) \cong \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t}\,, \tag{2.5.30}$$

where Γ is meant to be independent of time t. Clearly, this cannot be the exact solution of the differential-integral equation (2.5.29) for $\alpha(t)$, but let us try it nevertheless because it is a physically motivated approximation that is reasonably plausible.

On the left-hand side of (2.5.29), we get

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big) \cong -\frac{1}{2}\Gamma\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t} \tag{2.5.31}$$

and on the right-hand side,

$$\begin{aligned}
&-\sum_\nu \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega-\omega_\nu)(t-t')}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t'} \\
&= -\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t}\sum_\nu \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\ \mathrm{e}^{\left(\mathrm{i}(\omega-\omega_\nu)+\frac{1}{2}\Gamma\right)(t-t')} \\
&= -\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t}\sum_\nu \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 \left(-\frac{1-\mathrm{e}^{\left(\mathrm{i}(\omega-\omega_\nu)+\frac{1}{2}\Gamma\right)t}}{\mathrm{i}(\omega-\omega_\nu)+\frac{1}{2}\Gamma}\right)
\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.32}$$

so that

$$\frac{1}{2}\Gamma \cong \mathrm{i}\sum_\nu \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 \frac{1-\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega-\omega_\nu)t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t}}{\omega-\omega_\nu-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\Gamma}\,. \tag{2.5.33}$$

Now, just as in the step that took us from γ_ν to γ in Section 2.5.1, we apply the averaging over modes with common frequency $\omega' = \omega_\nu$ and introduce the mode density $\rho(\omega')$, as summarized in the rule

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_\nu \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 a(\omega_\nu) &\to \int \mathrm{d}\omega'\,\rho(\omega')\,\overline{\left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2}\,a(\omega') \\
&= \int \mathrm{d}\omega'\,f(\omega')a(\omega')
\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.34}$$

for the function $a(\omega')$ in question, here, the ratio in (2.5.33). Thus, we arrive at

$$\frac{1}{2}\Gamma \cong \mathrm{i}\int \mathrm{d}\omega'\,f(\omega')\frac{1-\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\omega'-\omega)t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t}}{\omega-\omega'-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\Gamma}\,. \tag{2.5.35}$$

The main contribution to this integral comes from the vicinity of $\omega' \cong \omega$ because Γ is small (otherwise the treatment would be inconsistent) and the integrand is, therefore, dominated by the $\omega'-\omega$ terms in its time dependence and size. So, we continue to be "brutal" in our approximate treatment and just neglect the Γ terms on the right,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1-\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\omega'-\omega)t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t}}{\omega-\omega'-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\Gamma} &\to \frac{1-\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\omega'-\omega)t}}{\omega-\omega'} \\
&= -\frac{1-\cos\big((\omega'-\omega)t\big)}{\omega'-\omega} - \mathrm{i}\frac{\sin\big((\omega'-\omega)t\big)}{\omega'-\omega}\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.36}$$

The real part

$$\frac{1-\cos\bigl((\omega'-\omega)t\bigr)}{\omega'-\omega} \cong \begin{cases} \dfrac{1}{\omega'-\omega} & \text{for} \quad \text{large } t\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad t=0\,, \end{cases} \tag{2.5.37}$$

where "large t" means large on the scale set by typical $\omega'-\omega$ differences, has the characterizing properties of the principal value of a singular integration,

$$\frac{1-\cos\bigl((\omega'-\omega)t\bigr)}{\omega'-\omega} \cong \mathcal{P}\frac{1}{\omega'-\omega}\,. \tag{2.5.38}$$

The imaginary part,

$$\frac{\sin\bigl((\omega'-\omega)t\bigr)}{\omega'-\omega} \cong \begin{cases} t & \text{for} \quad \omega'=\omega\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad \omega'\neq\omega\,, \end{cases} \tag{2.5.39}$$

has the features characteristic of a delta function,

$$\frac{\sin\bigl((\omega'-\omega)t\bigr)}{\omega'-\omega} \cong \pi\delta(\omega'-\omega) \tag{2.5.40}$$

for large t. Together, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\Gamma &= \mathrm{i}\int \mathrm{d}\omega'\, f(\omega')\biggl(-\mathcal{P}\frac{1}{\omega'-\omega} - \mathrm{i}\pi\delta(\omega'-\omega)\biggr) \\ &= \pi f(\omega) - \mathrm{i}\mathcal{P}\int \mathrm{d}\omega'\,\frac{f(\omega')}{\omega'-\omega} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\gamma + \mathrm{i}\Delta\omega\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.5.41}$$

with the transition rate $\gamma = 2\pi f(\omega)$ of (2.5.16) that we found in Section 2.5.1 as an application of the golden rule. In addition, we now identify a frequency shift

$$\Delta\omega = -\mathcal{P}\int \mathrm{d}\omega'\,\frac{f(\omega')}{\omega'-\omega}\,, \tag{2.5.42}$$

which is very tiny and only noticeable in high-precision spectroscopy. It contributes to the *Lamb shift*, a very fine detail in atomic spectra, discovered by Lamb.*

In summary, we have

$$\alpha(t) \cong \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\omega+\Delta\omega)t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\gamma t/2} \tag{2.5.43}$$

*Willis Eugene LAMB (1913–2008)

and

$$\left|\alpha(t)\right|^2 \cong \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma t} \tag{2.5.44}$$

is the probability that no photon emission has occurred up to time t. To get a better feeling for what is going on, let us look at $\beta_\nu(t)$, the probability amplitude for the emission of a photon into the νth mode after the lapse of time t,

$$\begin{aligned}\beta_\nu(t) &= \mathrm{i}\Omega_\nu \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\ \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t-t')}\alpha(t') \\ &\cong \mathrm{i}\Omega_\nu\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t} \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t'}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\omega+\Delta\omega)t'}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma t'/2} \\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu t}\, \Omega_\nu\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}(\omega+\Delta\omega-\omega_\nu)t}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\gamma t/2} - 1}{\omega_\nu - \omega - \Delta\omega + \mathrm{i}\gamma/2}\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.45}$$

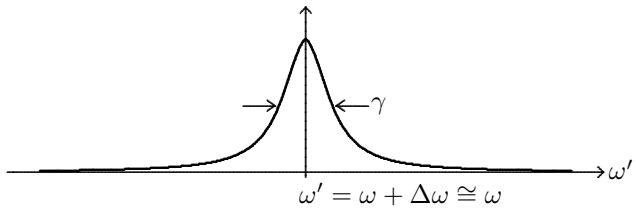
which, for $t \gg 1/\gamma$, gives

$$\left|\beta_\nu\right|^2 = \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 \frac{1}{\left(\omega_\nu - \omega - \Delta\omega\right)^2 + (\gamma/2)^2}\,. \tag{2.5.46}$$

The total emission probability, after waiting long enough, is therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_\nu \left|\beta_\nu(t)\right|^2\Big|_{t\,\gg\,1/\gamma} &= \sum_\nu \left|\Omega_\nu\right|^2 \frac{1}{(\omega_\nu - \omega - \Delta\omega)^2 + (\gamma/2)^2} \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}\omega'\, f(\omega') \frac{1}{(\omega' - \omega - \Delta\omega)^2 + (\gamma/2)^2} \\ &= \int \mathrm{d}\omega'\, \frac{\gamma}{2\pi} \frac{1}{(\omega' - \omega - \Delta\omega)^2 + (\gamma/2)^2} = 1\,,\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.47}$$

where we first recognize that $\dfrac{1}{(\omega' - \omega - \Delta\omega)^2 + (\gamma/2)^2}$ is very strongly peaked at $\omega' = \omega + \Delta\omega \cong \omega$ with a narrow width given by γ:



(2.5.48)

and then note that, therefore, $f(\omega') \cong f(\omega + \Delta\omega) \cong f(\omega) = \gamma/(2\pi)$ is a permissible and consistent approximation.

This curve is the so-called *Lorentz* profile*, which is typical for the line shape of a spectral line, with its "full width at half maximum" equal to the transition rate γ. Under ideal experimental circumstances (no line broadening by thermal motion and the like), one observes this line shape in spectroscopy for well-isolated spectral lines.

2.5.3 *An exact treatment*

An alternative, and perhaps more systematic, way of solving the integral-differential equation (2.5.29) begins with incorporating the mode averaging of (2.5.34) right away, thereby arriving at

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big) = -\int \mathrm{d}\omega'\, f(\omega') \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\; \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega\,-\,\omega')(t\,-\,t')}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t'}\alpha(t')\Big)\,. \tag{2.5.49}$$

Now, rather than searching for $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)$ directly, we look for its Laplace* transform,

$$a(s) = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t\, \mathrm{e}^{-st}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\,, \tag{2.5.50}$$

for which purpose we multiply (2.5.49) by e^{-st} and integrate over t. On the left-hand side, this gives

$$\begin{aligned}&\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t\, \mathrm{e}^{-st}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big)\\ &= \mathrm{e}^{-st}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big|_{t\,=\,0}^{t\,=\,\infty} + s\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t\, \mathrm{e}^{-st}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t) = -1 + sa(s)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.51}$$

On the right-hand side, we encounter

$$\begin{aligned}&\underbrace{\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t \int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'}\; \mathrm{e}^{-st}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega\,-\,\omega')(t\,-\,t')}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t'}\alpha(t')\\ &\qquad = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t' \int_{t'}^\infty \mathrm{d}t \qquad \text{[cf. (3.3.6) in } \textit{Simple Systems}\text{]}\\ &= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t' \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t\; \mathrm{e}^{-s(t\,+\,t')}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega\,-\,\omega')t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t'}\alpha(t')\\ &= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t\; \mathrm{e}^{-st}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega\,-\,\omega')t} \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t'\; \mathrm{e}^{-st'}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t'}\alpha(t')\\ &= \frac{1}{s + \mathrm{i}(\omega' - \omega)}a(s)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{2.5.52}$$

*Hendrik Antoon LORENTZ (1853–1929) *Pierre Simon de LAPLACE (1749–1827)

where we observe the usual factorization of the Laplace transform of a convolution integral. This turns (2.5.49) into

$$sa(s) - 1 = -a(s) \int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, \frac{f(\omega')}{s + \mathrm{i}(\omega' - \omega)} \,. \tag{2.5.53}$$

Its immediate implication

$$a(s) = \left(s + \int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, \frac{f(\omega')}{s + \mathrm{i}(\omega' - \omega)} \right)^{-1} \tag{2.5.54}$$

yields the exact solution of (2.5.49) by virtue of the inverse Laplace transform that expresses $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)$ in terms of $a(s)$,

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{d}\kappa}{2\pi} \, \mathrm{e}^{(s_0 + \mathrm{i}\kappa)t} a(s_0 + \mathrm{i}\kappa) \quad \text{with} \quad s_0 > 0 \,, \tag{2.5.55}$$

where we integrate $a(s)$ in the complex s plane along a line parallel to the imaginary axis with a positive, but otherwise arbitrary, real part of s. With the explicit expression for $a(s)$ in (2.5.54), and taking the limit $\epsilon = s_0 \to 0$, we have

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\mathrm{d}\kappa}{2\pi\mathrm{i}} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa t} \left(\kappa - \mathrm{i}\epsilon - \int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, \frac{f(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega + \kappa - \mathrm{i}\epsilon} \right)^{-1} \Bigg|_{0 < \epsilon \to 0} \,, \tag{2.5.56}$$

which could now serve as the basis for systematic approximations.

This exact solution of (2.5.49) states $\alpha(t)$ for all $t > 0$, which is a much more detailed information than we care about. We must not forget that the physical model that is defined by the Hamilton operator (2.5.9) involves *physical approximations*, in particular the reduction of the complex atom to just two relevant states. Therefore, there is no need for utter mathematical precision when solving the coupled Schrödinger equations of (2.5.22). Rather, we should be guided by the physical situation and employ reasonable *mathematical approximations* when extracting the physical quantities of interest from (2.5.54).

With the aim of establishing contact with the findings in Section 2.5.2, we focus on the behavior for large t, which corresponds to small s values. The simplest approximation is then to replace the integral in (2.5.54) by its $s = 0$ value,

$$\int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, \frac{f(\omega')}{s + \mathrm{i}(\omega' - \omega)}\bigg|_{s \to 0} = \int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, f(\omega') \bigg(\pi\delta(\omega' - \omega) - \mathrm{i}\mathcal{P}\frac{1}{\omega' - \omega} \bigg)$$
$$= \pi f(\omega) - \mathrm{i}\mathcal{P} \int \mathrm{d}\omega' \, \frac{f(\omega')}{\omega' - \omega}$$
$$= \frac{1}{2}\gamma + \mathrm{i}\Delta\omega \,, \tag{2.5.57}$$

where we recognize the ingredients of (2.5.41), the transition rate γ of (2.5.16) and the frequency shift $\Delta\omega$ of (2.5.42). The first step in (2.5.57) is an application of

$$\frac{1}{x \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon}\bigg|_{\epsilon \to 0} = \mathcal{P}\frac{1}{x} \mp \mathrm{i}\pi\delta(x) \,, \tag{2.5.58}$$

which combines the familiar models $\dfrac{x}{x^2 + \epsilon^2}$ and $\dfrac{\epsilon/\pi}{x^2 + \epsilon^2}$ for the principal value and the Dirac delta function, respectively.

With this simplest approximation then, we have

$$a(s) \cong \frac{1}{s + \frac{1}{2}\Gamma} = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}t \; \mathrm{e}^{-st} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}\Gamma t} \tag{2.5.59}$$

and are thus led back to the *ansatz* in (2.5.30). The Laplace transform reasoning, therefore, justifies this *ansatz* and offers the option of systematic improvements on the basis of (2.5.54).

2.6 Driven two-level atom

2.6.1 *Schrödinger equation*

In the situation considered in Section 2.5, there are no photons initially. The other extreme is the situation in which there are so many photons initially that we can regard the photon field as a classical radiation field. Then, the emission of one more photon, or the absorption of one of the many photons, does not change the photon field significantly, and we can therefore neglect the back action of the atom on the photons. Formally, you can think of the photon state to be a collection of coherent states (see Section 3.4.2 in *Simple Systems*), that is, eigenkets of all A_ν and eigenbras

of all $A_\nu^\dagger$, so that

– the initial state $|(\text{e or g}), \{a'_\nu\}, t_2\rangle = |\text{init}\rangle$ is a joint eigenket of all $A_\nu(t_2)$:
$$A_\nu(t_2)\big|\text{init}\big\rangle = \big|\text{init}\big\rangle a'_\nu\,,$$
– the final state $\langle(\text{e or g}), \{a^*_\nu\}, t_1| = \langle\text{fin}|$ is a joint eigenbra of all $A_\nu(t_1)^\dagger$:
$$\big\langle\text{fin}\big|A_\nu^\dagger(t_1) = a^*_\nu\big\langle\text{fin}\big|\,. \tag{2.6.1}$$

With no action of the atom on the photons, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A_\nu(t) &= \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t_2)}A_\nu(t_2)\,,\\ A_\nu(t)^\dagger &= A_\nu(t_1)^\dagger\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t_1\,-\,t)}\,,\\ \text{and}\quad a^*_\nu &= \Big(\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t_1\,-\,t_2)}a'_\nu\Big)^* = a'^{\,*}_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t_1\,-\,t_2)}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.2}$$

Effectively, then, the operators $A_\nu(t), A_\nu^\dagger(t)$ are replaced by the numbers

$$\begin{aligned} A_\nu(t) &\to \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t_2)}a'_\nu\,,\\ A_\nu(t)^\dagger &\to a^*_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t_1\,-\,t)} = a'^{\,*}_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t_2)}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.3}$$

and so H_{phot} of (2.5.5) is replaced by

$$H_{\text{phot}} \to \sum_\nu \hbar\omega_\nu\,|a'_\nu|^2\,, \tag{2.6.4}$$

which is a number, and H_{int} is replaced by

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{int}} &\to -\sum_\nu \hbar\Big(\Omega_\nu\sigma a'^{\,*}_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t_2)} + \Omega^*_\nu\sigma^\dagger a'_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t_2)}\Big)\\ &= -\hbar\Big(\Omega(t)\sigma + \Omega(t)^*\sigma^\dagger\Big) \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.5}$$

with the numerical function

$$\Omega(t) = \sum_\nu \Omega_\nu a'^{\,*}_\nu\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega_\nu(t\,-\,t_2)}\,, \tag{2.6.6}$$

which is a rather arbitrary function of time.

In a typical experimental situation, the atom would be exposed to a laser pulse and the *time-dependent Rabi frequency* $\Omega(t)$ would specify the strength, duration, and spectral content of the pulse. In short, $\Omega(t)$ is under the control of the experimenter.

We have no further use for $H_{\rm phot}$ now that it is just a numerical constant so that

$$H = \hbar\omega\sigma^\dagger\sigma - \hbar\Big(\Omega(t)\sigma + \Omega(t)^*\sigma^\dagger\Big) \tag{2.6.7}$$

is the Hamilton operator for such a driven two-level atom. We take the general ket

$$\big|\ \big\rangle = \big|{\rm e},t\big\rangle\alpha(t) + \big|{\rm g},t\big\rangle\beta(t) \tag{2.6.8}$$

and write down the Schrödinger equations obeyed by the probability amplitudes

$$\alpha(t) = \big\langle {\rm e},t\big|\ \big\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \beta(t) = \big\langle {\rm g},t\big|\ \big\rangle\,. \tag{2.6.9}$$

They are

$$\begin{aligned}{\rm i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\alpha(t) &= \big\langle {\rm e},t\big|H\big|\ \big\rangle = \hbar\omega\big\langle {\rm e},t\big|\ \big\rangle - \hbar\Omega(t)^*\big\langle {\rm g},t\big|\ \big\rangle \\ &= \hbar\omega\alpha(t) - \hbar\Omega(t)^*\beta(t)\end{aligned} \tag{2.6.10}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\beta(t) &= \big\langle {\rm g},t\big|H\big|\ \big\rangle = -\hbar\Omega(t)\big\langle {\rm e},t\big|\ \big\rangle \\ &= -\hbar\Omega(t)\alpha(t)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{2.6.11}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + {\rm i}\omega\right)\alpha(t) &= {\rm i}\Omega(t)^*\beta(t)\,, \\ \frac{\partial}{\partial t}\beta(t) &= {\rm i}\Omega(t)\alpha(t)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{2.6.12}$$

Upon recognizing once more that

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + {\rm i}\omega\right)\alpha(t) = {\rm e}^{-{\rm i}\omega t}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Big({\rm e}^{{\rm i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\Big)\,, \tag{2.6.13}$$

this pair of equations can be presented quite compactly as

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\begin{pmatrix}{\rm e}^{{\rm i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix} = {\rm i}\begin{pmatrix}0 & {\rm e}^{{\rm i}\omega t}\Omega(t)^*\\ {\rm e}^{-{\rm i}\omega t}\Omega(t) & 0\end{pmatrix}\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}{\rm e}^{{\rm i}\omega t}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}}_{=\psi(t)} \tag{2.6.14}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\psi(t) = \mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \widetilde{\Omega}(t)^* \\ \widetilde{\Omega}(t) & 0 \end{pmatrix}\psi(t)\,, \tag{2.6.15}$$

where $\psi(t)$ is the two-component column composed of the probability amplitudes $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)$ and $\beta(t)$, and

$$\widetilde{\Omega}(t) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\Omega(t)\,. \tag{2.6.16}$$

The column $\psi(t)$ is the numerical description of the state ket of (2.6.8) and, accordingly, (2.6.15) is the Schrödinger equation for the driven two-level atom.

Inasmuch as the replacements $\alpha(t) \to \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t)$, $\Omega(t) \to \widetilde{\Omega}(t)$ remove the time dependence that is there without the interaction so that $\psi(t)$ changes only as a consequence of the interaction, we have arrived at the equation of motion in the "interaction picture." Never mind the words, though, what is important is that, even after this convenient rewriting, we cannot solve the equation for an arbitrary time dependence $\widetilde{\Omega}(t)$. The reason is, of course, that the 2×2 matrices for different times do not commute and, therefore, we cannot integrate the differential equation by a simple exponentiation.

2.6.2 *Resonant drive*

There is, however, an important exception, namely that of *resonant driving*, meaning that the frequency of the external drive exactly matches the natural frequency of the atomic transition. Here, this means

$$\Omega(t) = \underset{\uparrow\\ \text{constant}}{\Omega_0}\ \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t} \tag{2.6.17}$$

so that $\widetilde{\Omega}(t) = \Omega_0$ has a time-independent value, and the parametric time dependence disappears from the differential equation for $\psi(t)$,

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\psi(t) = \mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\psi(t)\,. \tag{2.6.18}$$

This 2×2 matrix is, essentially, a square root of the identity, inasmuch as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^2 = \left|\Omega_0\right|^2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.6.19}$$

As a consequence, it is easily exponentiated,

$$\exp\left(\mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} t\right) = \cos\left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} t\right) + \mathrm{i}\sin\left(\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} t\right)$$
$$= \cos\big(|\Omega_0|t\big)\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \mathrm{i}\sin\big(|\Omega_0|t\big)\frac{1}{|\Omega_0|}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{2.6.20}$$

and

$$\psi(t) = \exp\left(\mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} t\right)\psi(0) \tag{2.6.21}$$

reads, more explicitly,

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\alpha(t) = \cos\big(|\Omega_0|t\big)\alpha(0) + \mathrm{i}\sin\big(|\Omega_0|t\big)\frac{\Omega_0^*}{|\Omega_0|}\beta(0)\,,$$
$$\beta(t) = \cos\big(|\Omega_0|t\big)\beta(0) + \mathrm{i}\sin\big(|\Omega_0|t\big)\frac{\Omega_0}{|\Omega_0|}\alpha(0)\,. \tag{2.6.22}$$

These probability amplitudes, and then also the resulting probabilities, are periodic functions in time with the period determined by the one frequency that is still present: the Rabi frequency $|\Omega_0|$.

2.6.3 *Periodic drive*

What about a *periodic drive* at a frequency different from ω? Let us consider

$$\Omega(t) = \Omega_0\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\omega+\Delta)t} \quad \text{with constant } \Omega_0\,, \tag{2.6.23}$$

where the *detuning* Δ is the frequency mismatch, so that

$$\widetilde{\Omega}(t) = \Omega_0\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t}\,. \tag{2.6.24}$$

Then,

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \widetilde{\Omega}(t)^* \\ \widetilde{\Omega}(t) & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t} \\ \Omega_0\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$= \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.6.25}$$

is an invitation to take a look at

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\left(\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2}\end{pmatrix}\psi(t)\right) = \mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & 0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2}\end{pmatrix}\psi(t) + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\begin{pmatrix} \Delta & 0 \\ 0 & -\Delta\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2}\end{pmatrix}\psi(t) \tag{2.6.26}$$

so that

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\overline{\psi}(t) = \mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2\end{pmatrix}\overline{\psi}(t) \tag{2.6.27}$$

is a differential equation, with no parametric time dependence, for

$$\overline{\psi}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2}\end{pmatrix}\psi(t)\,. \tag{2.6.28}$$

It can, therefore, be integrated by exponentiation, which yields

$$\overline{\psi}(t) = \exp\left(\mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2\end{pmatrix}t\right)\overline{\psi}(0)\,. \tag{2.6.29}$$

The 2×2 matrix here is also essentially a square root of the identity,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2\end{pmatrix}^2 = \left(\left|\Omega_0\right|^2 + (\Delta/2)^2\right)\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix}, \tag{2.6.30}$$

and so we get

$$\overline{\psi}(t) = \left(\cos\left(\overline{\Omega}t\right)\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1\end{pmatrix} + \mathrm{i}\frac{\sin\left(\overline{\Omega}t\right)}{\overline{\Omega}}\begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2\end{pmatrix}\right)\overline{\psi}(0) \tag{2.6.31}$$

with

$$\overline{\Omega} = \sqrt{\left|\Omega_0\right|^2 + (\Delta/2)^2}\,. \tag{2.6.32}$$

Compared with (2.6.22), the oscillation is now with the frequency of this *modified Rabi frequency*, modified by the detuning Δ between the natural frequency ω of the atomic transition and the frequency $\omega+\Delta$ of the external driving field.

2.6.4 *Very slow drive: Adiabatic evolution*

There is one more situation in which we can say something quite definite about the evolution governed by the Hamilton operator (2.6.7),

$$H = \hbar\omega\sigma^\dagger\sigma - \hbar\Big(\Omega(t)\sigma + \Omega(t)^*\sigma^\dagger\Big)\,, \tag{2.6.33}$$

namely when the time-dependent Rabi frequency $\Omega(t)$ changes very slowly, that is, slowly on the time scale set by the energy difference $\hbar\omega$ between the eigenstates of $H_0 = \hbar\omega\sigma^\dagger\sigma$. These eigenstates and their eigenvalues themselves depend parametrically on time t because $\Omega(t)$ introduces such a time dependence into the Hamilton operator. We summarize the Schrödinger equations (2.6.12) for $\alpha(t) = \langle \mathrm{e}, t| \,\rangle$ and $\beta(t) = \langle \mathrm{g}, t| \,\rangle$ in

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix} &= \hbar\begin{pmatrix}\omega & -\Omega(t)^*\\ -\Omega(t) & 0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix} \\ &= \mathcal{H}(t)\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.34}$$

where the 2×2 matrix $\mathcal{H}(t)$ is the numerical matrix that represents H in the basis made up by $|\mathrm{e}, t\rangle$ and $|\mathrm{g}, t\rangle$,

$$H = \Big(\,|\mathrm{e}, t\rangle\;|\mathrm{g}, t\rangle\,\Big)\mathcal{H}\begin{pmatrix}\langle \mathrm{e}, t|\\ \langle \mathrm{g}, t|\end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.6.35}$$

We find the eigenvalues and eigenstates of H by determining the eigenvalues, eigencolumns, and eigenrows of matrix $\mathcal{H}$. To this end, we note that the trace of $\mathcal{H}(t)$ is $\hbar\omega$ and the determinant is $-\hbar^2\big|\Omega(t)\big|^2$. It follows that the eigenvalues are

$$E_\pm = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega \pm \frac{1}{2}\hbar\sqrt{\omega^2 + 4\big|\Omega(t)\big|^2}\,. \tag{2.6.36}$$

One verifies easily that $E_+ + E_- = \hbar\omega$ is the correct value of the trace and $E_+E_- = -\hbar^2\big|\Omega(t)\big|^2$ is the correct value of the determinant.

It will be expedient to write

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{\omega} &= \sqrt{\omega^2 + 4\big|\Omega(t)\big|^2}\,, \\ \omega &= \overline{\omega}\cos(2\vartheta)\,, \\ \Omega &= \frac{1}{2}\overline{\omega}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(2\vartheta)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.37}$$

where $\overline{\omega}, \vartheta$, and φ all depend on t as they inherit the parametric t dependence of $\Omega(t)$. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{H} &= \hbar\begin{pmatrix} \omega & -\Omega^* \\ -\Omega & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{\hbar}{2}\begin{pmatrix} \omega & -2\Omega^* \\ -2\Omega & -\omega \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \hbar\begin{pmatrix} \omega & -\Omega^* \\ -\Omega & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \frac{1}{2}\hbar\overline{\omega}\begin{pmatrix} \cos(2\vartheta) & -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(2\vartheta) \\ -\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(2\vartheta) & -\cos(2\vartheta) \end{pmatrix}, \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.38}$$

and since

$$\begin{aligned}\begin{pmatrix} \cos(2\vartheta) & -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(2\vartheta) \\ -\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(2\vartheta) & -\cos(2\vartheta) \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\vartheta) \\ -\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \end{pmatrix}\Big(\cos(\vartheta) \;\; -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta)\Big) \\ &\quad - \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \\ \cos(\vartheta) \end{pmatrix}\Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \;\; \cos(\vartheta)\Big) \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.39}$$

exhibits the eigencolumns and eigenrows of this 2×2 matrix to its eigenvalues $+1$ and -1, we have, for $\mathcal{H}$ itself,

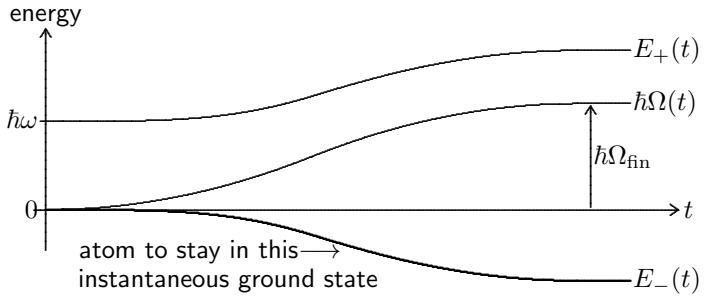
$$\begin{aligned} &\text{eigenvalue } \frac{\hbar}{2}(\omega + \overline{\omega}): \quad \text{eigencolumn } \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\vartheta) \\ -\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \end{pmatrix}, \\ &\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{eigenrow } \Big(\cos(\vartheta) \;\; -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta)\Big); \\ &\text{eigenvalue } \frac{\hbar}{2}(\omega - \overline{\omega}): \quad \text{eigencolumn } \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \\ \cos(\vartheta) \end{pmatrix}, \\ &\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \text{eigenrow } \Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \;\; \cos(\vartheta)\Big). \end{aligned} \tag{2.6.40}$$

Suppose now that $\Omega(t)$ changes *slowly* in time, meaning roughly that

$$\underbrace{\left|\frac{\partial\Omega}{\partial t}\Big/\Omega\right|}_{\substack{\text{relative change} \\ \text{of } \Omega \text{ per unit time}}} \ll \frac{E_+ - E_-}{\hbar} = \overline{\omega}, \tag{2.6.41}$$

$\overline{\omega}$: 2π times the number of oscillations per unit time

then we expect that the system adapts itself to the slowly changing circumstances *adiabatically*. More specifically, we expect that if we are in the ground state of H initially, we stay in the ground state during the slow change of $\Omega(0) = 0$ to $\Omega(\text{late } t) = \Omega_{\text{fin}}$:



(2.6.42)

To see whether this expectation is correct, we look at the time dependence of the probability amplitude $a(t)$ for the instantaneous excited state,

$$a(t) = \big(\cos(\vartheta) \;\; -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta)\big)\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}, \tag{2.6.43}$$

and the probability amplitude $b(t)$ for the instantaneous ground state,

$$b(t) = \big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \;\; \cos(\vartheta)\big)\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.6.44}$$

For these, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}a(t) = {}& \left(\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big(\cos(\vartheta) \;\; -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta)\big)\right)\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}\\ &+ \big(\cos(\vartheta) \;\; -\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta)\big)\mathcal{H}\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}\end{aligned} \tag{2.6.45}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}b(t) = {}& \left(\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \;\; \cos(\vartheta)\big)\right)\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}\\ &+ \big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(\vartheta) \;\; \cos(\vartheta)\big)\mathcal{H}\begin{pmatrix}\alpha(t)\\ \beta(t)\end{pmatrix}.\end{aligned} \tag{2.6.46}$$

The respective second terms have the eigenrows of $\mathcal{H}$ to the left of $\mathcal{H}$ so that $\mathcal{H} \to \frac{1}{2}\hbar(\omega+\overline{\omega})$ in (2.6.45) and $\mathcal{H} \to \frac{1}{2}\hbar(\omega-\overline{\omega})$ in (2.6.46),

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}a(t) &= \frac{\omega+\overline{\omega}}{2}a(t) + \left(\text{terms proportional to } \frac{\partial\vartheta}{\partial t} \text{ and } \frac{\partial\varphi}{\partial t}\right),\\ \mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}b(t) &= \frac{\omega-\overline{\omega}}{2}b(t) + \left(\text{terms proportional to } \frac{\partial\vartheta}{\partial t} \text{ and } \frac{\partial\varphi}{\partial t}\right),\end{aligned} \tag{2.6.47}$$

where the "terms proportional to ..." are small if $\Omega(t)$ changes slowly. These small terms couple $a(t)$ to $b(t)$, as you will see when you work out Exercise 44. But it is clear that they are negligible if they are indeed small on the scale set by the rapid evolution that happens with frequency $(E_+ - E_-)/\hbar = \overline{\omega}$, and so we discard them.

In this adiabatic approximation, then, the equations are solved immediately by

$$a(t) \cong a(0)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\,(\omega+\overline{\omega}(t'))} \tag{2.6.48}$$

and

$$b(t) \cong b(0)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\int_0^t \mathrm{d}t'\,(\omega-\overline{\omega}(t'))} \tag{2.6.49}$$

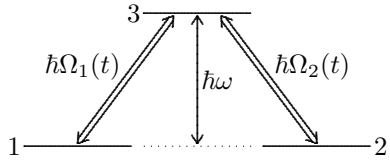
so that

$$\big|a(t)\big|^2 \cong \big|a(0)\big|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \big|b(t)\big|^2 \cong \big|b(0)\big|^2 . \tag{2.6.50}$$

Yes, when the external conditions change adiabatically (here, $\dfrac{\partial\Omega}{\partial t}$ is small in comparison with $\overline{\omega}\,\Omega$), then the system goes from an instantaneous eigenstate of H to an instantaneous eigenstate of H with no significant probability of transitions between them.

2.7 Adiabatic population transfer

Here is an application of adiabatic evolution to a real-life physical problem. Some atoms have degenerate ground states (magnetic sublevels) that can couple to the same excited state with electromagnetic radiation of the same frequency but different polarization. Then, the experimenter can separately control the time-dependent Rabi frequencies $\Omega_1(t)$ and $\Omega_2(t)$ in a level scheme like this one:



(2.7.1)

In quantum optics, one speaks of a "three-level atom in Λ configuration." The ground states 1 and 2 are of energy 0 (by convention) and the excited

state 3 has energy $\hbar\omega$; the coupling between 1 and 3 has a strength given by $\Omega_1(t)$ and the coupling between 2 and 3 has a strength given by $\Omega_2(t)$. There is no direct coupling between 1 and 2. The 3×3 matrix for the Hamilton operator in this situation is therefore

$$\mathcal{H}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \langle 1,t| \\ \langle 2,t| \\ \langle 3,t| \end{pmatrix} H\Big(|1,t\rangle \; |2,t\rangle \; |3,t\rangle \Big) = \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -\Omega_1^* \\ 0 & 0 & -\Omega_2^* \\ -\Omega_1 & -\Omega_2 & \omega \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.7.2}$$

with $\Omega_1 = \Omega_1(t)$, $\Omega_2 = \Omega_2(t)$.

Now suppose that initially the atom is in the ground state 1,

$$\psi_{\text{init}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{2.7.3}$$

and we want to choose $\Omega_1(t)$ and $\Omega_2(t)$ such that the atom is surely in the ground state 2 at the final time when $\Omega_1(t) = 0$ and $\Omega_2(t) = 0$ again,

$$\psi_{\text{fin}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{2.7.4}$$

This can be accomplished indeed, and the crucial observation is that $\mathcal{H}$ has an eigencolumn to eigenvalue 0,

$$\mathcal{H} \begin{pmatrix} \Omega_2 \\ -\Omega_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = 0\,, \tag{2.7.5}$$

for *any* choice of Ω_1 and Ω_2. In particular, we note

$$\Omega_1 = 0\,,\; \Omega_2 \neq 0: \quad \begin{pmatrix} \Omega_2 \\ -\Omega_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \propto \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \psi_{\text{init}} \tag{2.7.6}$$

and

$$\Omega_1 \neq 0\,,\; \Omega_2 = 0: \quad \begin{pmatrix} \Omega_2 \\ -\Omega_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \propto \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \psi_{\text{fin}}\,. \tag{2.7.7}$$

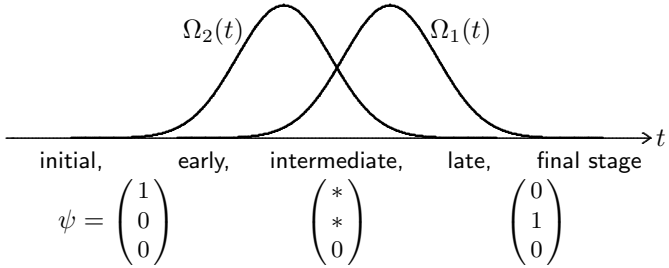
Therefore, if we arrange matters such that first $\Omega_2(t)$ acquires a sufficiently large value, while $\Omega_1(t) = 0$, and then $\Omega_1(t)$ increases, while $\Omega_2(t)$ decreases

to $\Omega_2(t) = 0$, followed by the switching off of $\Omega_1(t)$, then the sequence

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}}_{\substack{\text{initial}\\\text{time}}} \longrightarrow \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{|\Omega_1|^2+|\Omega_2|^2}}\begin{pmatrix}\Omega_2\\-\Omega_1\\0\end{pmatrix}}_{\substack{\text{intermediate}\\\text{time}}} \longrightarrow \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{pmatrix}}_{\substack{\text{final}\\\text{time}}} \tag{2.7.8}$$

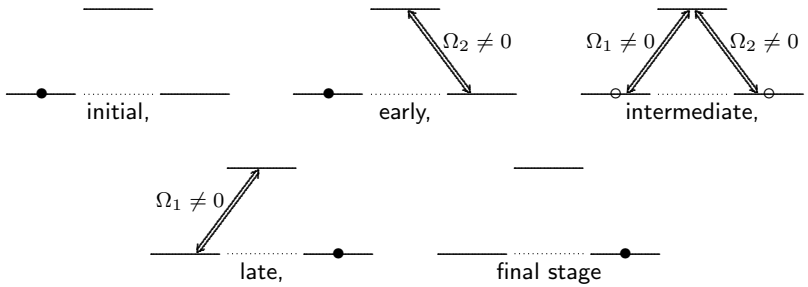
will be realized as an adiabatic evolution.

Graphically, we need to have



(2.7.9)

or, indicating level populations by circles ($\bullet = 100\%$, $\circ =$ part of 100%),



(2.7.10)

During the adiabatic transition from $\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\\0\end{pmatrix}$ to $\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\\0\end{pmatrix}$, there is never a component of $\begin{pmatrix}0\\0\\1\end{pmatrix}$, that is, during the whole process, the atom will not be found in the excited state 3, which is very important in practice because from this excited state the atom can usually also make spontaneous transitions to other final states than the two ground states of interest. The idea of this *adiabatic population transfer* was conceived by Eberly* and became an important experimental tool through the work of Bergmann† and others.

*Joseph Henry EBERLY (b. 1935) †Klaas BERGMANN (b. 1942)

2.8 Equation of motion for the unitary evolution operator

In the situations discussed in Sections 2.6–2.7, the respective Hamilton operators possess parametric time dependences so that the findings of Sections 2.1–2.3 do not apply immediately because they are all based on (2.1.1), where a parametric time dependence is explicitly excluded. This restriction can be lifted, however, as the formalism can be generalized quite easily and straightforwardly.

In relating bras at time t to those at the earlier time t_0,

$$\langle \ldots, t| = \langle \ldots, t_0 | U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big)\,, \tag{2.8.1}$$

it is natural to regard the unitary evolution operator U as a function of the dynamical variables at time t_0, indicated by the argument $A(t_0)$. In addition, it has, of course, a parametric dependence on t_0 and t. The dynamical variables at time t are related to those at time t_0 by the same unitary operator,

$$A(t) = U^\dagger A(t_0) U \quad \text{with} \quad U = U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big)\,. \tag{2.8.2}$$

In particular, it follows then that

$$\begin{aligned} U\big(A(t); t_0, t\big) &= \underbrace{U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big)^\dagger U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big)}_{=1} U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big) \\ &= U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{2.8.3}$$

that is, in the evolution operator U, it makes no difference if we take the dynamical operators at the final or initial time, the functional dependence on them is exactly the same.

The Schrödinger equation

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \ldots, t| = \langle \ldots, t | H\big(A(t), t\big) \tag{2.8.4}$$

involves the Hamilton operator at time t, with the dynamical variables referring to time t as well. We compare with

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \langle \ldots, t| &= \langle \ldots, t_0 | \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big) \\ &= \langle \ldots, t | U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big)^{-1} \mathrm{i}\hbar \frac{\partial}{\partial t} U\big(A(t_0); t_0, t\big) \end{aligned} \tag{2.8.5}$$

and conclude that

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U\big(A(t_0);t_0,t\big) = U\big(A(t_0);t_0,t\big)H\big(A(t),t\big)\,. \tag{2.8.6}$$

It is far more convenient to have all dynamical operators referring to the same instant, which we achieve by invoking

$$H\big(A(t),t\big) = U\big(A(t_0);t_0,t\big)^{\dagger}H\big(A(t_0),t\big)U\big(A(t_0);t_0,t\big) \tag{2.8.7}$$

to arrive at

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U\big(A(t_0);t_0,t\big) = H\big(A(t_0),t\big)U\big(A(t_0);t_0,t\big)\,. \tag{2.8.8}$$

This is often referred to, somewhat misleadingly, as the *Schrödinger equation for* U. In it, we have the dynamical variables at the common time t_0, and this is the important detail: the time argument is a common one. In fact, *any* common time will do because the dynamical variables at one instant are related to those at another one by a unitary transformation and, equally important, the differentiation in this Schrödinger equation for U refers to the parametric t dependence only and not to the dynamical or the total t dependence.

Now, having agreed upon the common time that we wish to use for reference (either t_0 or t in most applications), we suppress the dependence on the dynamical variables and write, more compactly,

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U(t_0,t) = H(t)U(t_0,t)\,. \tag{2.8.9}$$

The Hamilton operator is typically composed of an "unperturbed" part H_0 that usually has no parametric t dependence, and a perturbation $H_1(t)$ that usually does depend on t parametrically,

$$H(t) = H_0(t) + H_1(t)\,. \tag{2.8.10}$$

As noted above, this is a bit more general than the situation in Sections 2.1–2.3, where $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}H = 0$ is assumed in (2.1.1).

We shall not insist on $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}H_0 = 0$ but allow a parametric time dependence in H_0 as well. For $H_1(t) = 0$, we would then have

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U_0(t_0,t) = H_0(t)U_0(t_0,t) \tag{2.8.11}$$

with a *known* solution for $U_0(t_0,t)$. When $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}H_0 = 0$, we have the familiar

$$U_0(t_0,t) = \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}(t-t_0)H_0}\,, \tag{2.8.12}$$

of course, which depends only on the duration $t - t_0$, not on t and t_0 individually.

We introduce the scattering operator $S(t_0,t)$ in analogy with what we did in (2.2.3) by writing

$$U(t_0,t) = U_0(t_0,t)S(t_0,t)\,. \tag{2.8.13}$$

Then,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U(t_0,t) &= \left(\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U_0(t_0,t)\right)S(t_0,t) + U_0(t_0,t)\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}S(t_0,t)\\ &= H_0(t)U_0(t_0,t)S(t_0,t) + U_0(t_0,t)\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}S(t_0,t)\end{aligned} \tag{2.8.14}$$

and, by the Schrödinger equation (2.8.8) for $U(t_0,t)$, also

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}U(t_0,t) &= \big(H_0(t) + H_1(t)\big)U(t_0,t)\\ &= \big(H_0(t) + H_1(t)\big)U_0(t_0,t)S(t_0,t)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{2.8.15}$$

The implied equation of motion for the scattering operator is therefore

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}S(t_0,t) = U_0(t_0,t)^{-1}H_1(t)U_0(t_0,t)S(t_0,t) \tag{2.8.16}$$

or

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}S(t_0,t) = \overline{H_1}(t_0,t)S(t_0,t) \tag{2.8.17}$$

with

$$\overline{H_1}(t_0,t) = U_0(t_0,t)^{-1}H_1(t)U_0(t_0,t)\,. \tag{2.8.18}$$

Upon incorporating the initial condition $U(t_0,t_0) = 1$ or $S(t_0,t_0) = 1$, we get

$$S(t_0,t) = 1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t}\mathrm{d}t'\;\overline{H_1}(t_0,t')S(t_0,t')\,, \tag{2.8.19}$$

an equation of the Lippmann–Schwinger form. It is the obvious analog of the integral equation (2.2.10) and, owing to this analogy, we can immediately proceed to the Born series

$$\begin{aligned} S(t_0,t) = 1 &- \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t_0,t) \\ &+ \left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\right)^2 \int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t_0,t') \int_{t_0}^{t'} \mathrm{d}t''\, \overline{H_1}(t_0,t'') \\ &+ \cdots \end{aligned} \tag{2.8.20}$$

and its formal summation in terms of Dyson's time-ordered exponential

$$S(t_0,t) = \left(\exp\left(-\frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t_0,t')\right)\right)_{+}, \tag{2.8.21}$$

where the time ordering refers to the second argument of $\overline{H_1}(t_0,t)$. There is also the iteration scheme of (2.2.11),

$$S_{n+1}(t_0,t) = 1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{\hbar}\int_{t_0}^{t} \mathrm{d}t'\, \overline{H_1}(t_0,t') S_n(t_0,t')\,, \tag{2.8.22}$$

and if we start with $S(t_0,t) = 1$, this generates the successive approximations of the Born series.

In practice, the reliability and power of any such approximation method depends much on how one splits the Hamilton operator into H_0 and $H_1(t)$. As an illustration, let us reconsider the situation of (2.6.23)–(2.6.32), that is, a Hamilton operator represented by the 2×2 matrix

$$\mathcal{H} = \hbar\begin{pmatrix} \omega & -\Omega_0^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t} \\ -\Omega_0\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{2.8.23}$$

where Ω_0 is constant in time. Here, the best choice is not the simple split

$$\mathcal{H} = \underbrace{\hbar\begin{pmatrix} \omega & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\mathcal{H}_0} + \underbrace{\hbar\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\Omega_0^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t} \\ -\Omega_0\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t} & 0 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\mathcal{H}_1(t)} \tag{2.8.24}$$

but rather the less obvious split

$$\mathcal{H} = \underbrace{\hbar\begin{pmatrix} \omega+\Delta/2 & 0 \\ 0 & -\Delta/2 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\mathcal{H}_0} + \underbrace{\hbar\begin{pmatrix} -\Delta/2 & -\Omega_0^*\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t} \\ -\Omega_0\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t} & \Delta/2 \end{pmatrix}}_{=\mathcal{H}_1(t)} \tag{2.8.25}$$

because then, for $t_0 = 0$,

$$U_0(t_0 = 0, t) \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}t\mathcal{H}_0/\hbar} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} \end{pmatrix} \tag{2.8.26}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \overline{H}_1(t) &\mathrel{\widehat{=}} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}t\mathcal{H}_0/\hbar}\mathcal{H}_1(t)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}t\mathcal{H}_0/\hbar} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} \end{pmatrix} \mathcal{H}_1(t) \begin{pmatrix} \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\omega t}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} & 0 \\ 0 & \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\Delta t/2} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \hbar \begin{pmatrix} -\Delta/2 & -\Omega_0^* \\ -\Omega_0 & \Delta/2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \tag{2.8.27}$$

is independent of t. As a consequence, the time-ordering becomes irrelevant and we have

$$\begin{aligned} S(t_0 = 0, t) = \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}t\overline{H}_1/\hbar} &\mathrel{\widehat{=}} \exp\left(\mathrm{i}t \begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2 \end{pmatrix} \right) \\ &= \cos\bigl(\overline{\Omega}t\bigr) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \mathrm{i}\frac{\sin\bigl(\overline{\Omega}t\bigr)}{\overline{\Omega}} \begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \tag{2.8.28}$$

with the modified Rabi frequency $\overline{\Omega} = \sqrt{\bigl|\Omega\bigr|^2 + (\Delta/2)^2}$ of (2.6.32).

Chapter 3

Scattering

3.1 Probability density, probability current density

If the physical system is described by the three-dimensional wave function

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t) = \big\langle \boldsymbol{r},t\big|\ \big\rangle\,, \tag{3.1.1}$$

then the probability of finding it inside the volume V is

$$\mathrm{prob}(\mathrm{in}\,V,t) = \int_V (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\big|\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)\big|^2 = \int_V (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\big\langle\ \big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|\ \big\rangle\,, \tag{3.1.2}$$

which identifies

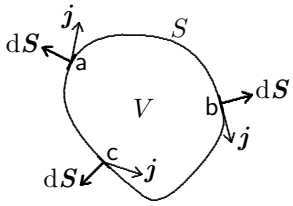
$$\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t) = \big\langle\ \big|\Big(\big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|\Big)\big|\ \big\rangle = \Big\langle\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\Big\rangle \tag{3.1.3}$$

as the *probability density* associated with the actual state of the system. The latter version, the expectation value of $\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big) = |\boldsymbol{r},t\rangle\langle\boldsymbol{r},t|$, carries over to mixed states for which a wave function is not available.

The probability $\mathrm{prob}(\mathrm{in}\,V,t)$ changes in time because there is the possibility that $\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t)$ increases or decreases inside V. This change comes about as the result of a *flux* of probability through the surface S of volume V,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathrm{prob}(\mathrm{in}\,V,t) = -\int_S \mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)\,, \tag{3.1.4}$$

where $\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)$ is the *probability current density* and $\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}$ is the outwardly oriented vectorial surface element:



a: $\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}>0$, flux out of the volume V
b: $\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}=0$, flux in the surface S
c: $\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}<0$, flux into the volume V

(3.1.5)

The minus sign in (3.1.4) accounts for the standard convention of regarding leaving flux as positive. The comparison of

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\mathrm{prob}(\mathrm{in}\,V,t)=\int_V(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t) \tag{3.1.6}$$

with this consequence of Gauss's* theorem,

$$\int_S\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\int_V(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)\,, \tag{3.1.7}$$

then implies the *continuity equation*

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t)+\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)=0\,, \tag{3.1.8}$$

the familiar local conservation law, here for probability.

We wish to establish an explicit expression for $\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)$ when the dynamics are of the typical simple kind, that is, when the Hamilton operator has the standard form

$$H=\frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2+V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\,. \tag{3.1.9}$$

What is important right now is that the velocity is just proportional to the momentum

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\boldsymbol{R}(t)=\frac{1}{M}\boldsymbol{P}(t)\,. \tag{3.1.10}$$

We proceed from

$$-\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\left\langle\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\right\rangle \tag{3.1.11}$$

and use

$$\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)=\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})} \tag{3.1.12}$$

*Karl Friedrich GAUSS (1777–1855)

to carry out the time differentiation with the aid of the differentiation rule (1.4.41) for exponential functions for operators. This gives

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\\
&=\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\int_0^1\mathrm{d}x\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\frac{\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{R}(t)}{\mathrm{d}t}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(1-x)\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}\\
&=\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\int_0^1\mathrm{d}x\;\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{R}(t)}\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\frac{\boldsymbol{P}(t)}{M}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}x\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{R}(t)}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}.
\end{aligned}\tag{3.1.13}$$

With

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{R}}\boldsymbol{P}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}x\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{R}}=\boldsymbol{P}-x\hbar\boldsymbol{k}\,,\tag{3.1.14}$$

which is the three-dimensional version of the second statement in (1.2.74), we then get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)=\frac{1}{M}\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\,\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\left(\boldsymbol{P}(t)-\frac{1}{2}\hbar\boldsymbol{k}\right)\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}\tag{3.1.15}$$

after evaluating the now elementary x integral. Equivalently, we can write

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)=\frac{1}{M}\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\left(\boldsymbol{P}(t)+\frac{1}{2}\hbar\boldsymbol{k}\right)\tag{3.1.16}$$

or, taking half the sum of both for symmetrization,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\\
&=\frac{1}{2M}\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\Big(\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}(t)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}+\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{P}(t)\Big)\\
&=-\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\frac{1}{2M}\int\frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k})}{(2\pi)^3}\Big(\boldsymbol{P}(t)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}+\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r})}\,\boldsymbol{P}(t)\Big)\\
&=-\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\frac{1}{2M}\Big(\boldsymbol{P}(t)\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)+\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\boldsymbol{P}(t)\Big),
\end{aligned}\tag{3.1.17}$$

where the gradient differentiates the numerical vector $\boldsymbol{r}$.

Accordingly, we have

$$\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\frac{1}{2M}\left\langle\Big(\boldsymbol{P}(t)\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)+\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\boldsymbol{P}(t)\Big)\right\rangle\tag{3.1.18}$$

for the probability current density when the dynamics is governed by a Hamilton operator of the typical form (3.1.9). When the system state is

specified by the ket $|\,\rangle$ with the position wave function $\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\langle \boldsymbol{r},t|\,\rangle$ of (3.1.1), this becomes

$$\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\frac{1}{2M}\left(\Big(\mathrm{i}\hbar\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)^*\Big)\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)+\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)^*\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)\right), \tag{3.1.19}$$

since

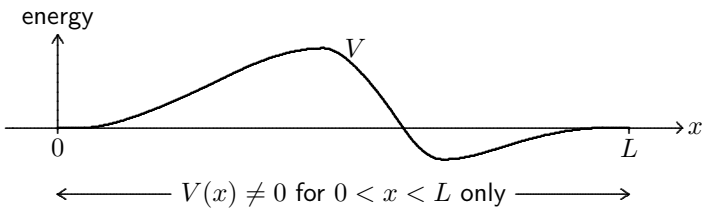
$$\begin{aligned}&\boldsymbol{P}(t)\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)+\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)\boldsymbol{P}(t)\\ &=\boldsymbol{P}(t)\big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|+\big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|\boldsymbol{P}(t)\\ &=\Big(\mathrm{i}\hbar\boldsymbol{\nabla}\big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\Big)\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|+\big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|.\end{aligned} \tag{3.1.20}$$

A more compactly written version of (3.1.19) is

$$\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\frac{1}{M}\,\mathrm{Re}\Big(\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)^*\frac{\hbar}{\mathrm{i}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)\Big)=\frac{\hbar}{M}\,\mathrm{Im}\Big(\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)^*\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)\Big)\,. \tag{3.1.21}$$

3.2 One-dimensional prelude: Forces scatter

Let us now consider a one-dimensional situation with a localized potential energy,



(3.2.1)

so that

$$H=\frac{1}{2M}P^2+V(X) \tag{3.2.2}$$

with

$$V(x)=0\quad\text{for}\quad x<0\quad\text{and}\quad x>L\,. \tag{3.2.3}$$

We want to study a scattering situation, with incoming amplitudes from the left ($x<0$) or the right ($x>L$), or from both sides. Sufficiently far to the left or right we have $H=P^2/(2M)$ essentially so that the relevant eigenvalues of H are positive or, put differently, we can ignore the bound states of H if there are any.

We parameterize the positive energies by $E = (\hbar k)^2/(2M)$ and then have the wave-number integral

$$\psi(x,t) = \int \mathrm{d}k\, A(k)\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\frac{\hbar k^2}{2M}t}\phi(k,x) \tag{3.2.4}$$

for the general solution of Schrödinger's equation, whereby $\phi(k,x)$ solves the time-independent Schrödinger equation, the eigenfunction equation

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + V(x)\right)\phi(k,x) = \frac{(\hbar k)}{2M}\phi(k,x)\,. \tag{3.2.5}$$

Equivalently, we write

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + k^2 - \frac{2M}{\hbar^2}V(x)\right)\phi(k,x) = 0 \tag{3.2.6}$$

or

$$\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}\phi(k,x) = -k(x)^2\phi(k,x)\,, \tag{3.2.7}$$

where

$$k(x) = \sqrt{k^2 - \frac{2M}{\hbar^2}V(x)}$$

is the *local* de Broglie wave number, $2\pi/k(x)$ being the local de Broglie* wavelength.

In the classically allowed regions, where $V(x) < (\hbar k)^2/(2M) = E$, $k(x)^2$ is positive and we choose $k(x) > 0$ by convention. In the classically forbidden region, where $V(x) > (\hbar k)^2/(2M) = E$, we have $k(x)^2 < 0$ and $k(x)$ is imaginary. For the purpose of this discussion, we assume that E is so large that $V(x) < E$ everywhere. The situation in which a classically allowed region is located between two classically forbidden regions is considered in Section 6.8 of *Simple Systems*.

Where $V(x) = 0$, we simply have $k(x) = k = \sqrt{2ME}/\hbar$ and

$$\phi(k,x) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kx} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kx} \quad \text{for} \quad x < 0 \quad \text{or} \quad x > L\,. \tag{3.2.8}$$

The probability currents associated with these plane waves are

$$j \propto \mathrm{Im}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\mp\mathrm{i}kx}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}kx}\right) = \pm k \tag{3.2.9}$$

*Louis-Victor de Broglie (1892–1987)

so that $\mathrm{e}^{+\mathrm{i}kx}$ would correspond to motion to the right (positive j) and $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kx}$ to motion to the left (negative j).

For $k(x) > 0$, the systematic decomposition of the general $\phi(k,x)$ into left and right moving parts is achieved by putting

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(k,x) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{k(x)}}\big(\phi_+(k,x) + \phi_-(k,x)\big)\,,\\ \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\phi(k,x) &= \sqrt{k(x)}\big(\phi_+(k,x) - \phi_-(k,x)\big)\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.10}$$

because then we have

$$\begin{aligned}j(k,x) &= \frac{\hbar}{M}\,\mathrm{Re}\bigg(\phi(k,x)^*\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\phi(k,x)\bigg)\\ &= \frac{\hbar}{M}\,\mathrm{Re}\big((\phi_+ + \phi_-)^*(\phi_+ - \phi_-)\big)\\ &= \frac{\hbar}{M}\Big(|\phi_+|^2 - |\phi_-|^2\Big)\,.\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.11}$$

As we see, ϕ_+ *always* gives a positive contribution to $j(k,x)$, whereas ϕ_- always gives a negative contribution, and this justifies our interpretation that ϕ_+ is the component moving from left to right and ϕ_- the component that moves from right to left.

The equations obeyed by $\phi_\pm(k,x)$ follow from the Schrödinger equation for $\phi = \big(\phi_+ + \phi_-\big)/\sqrt{k(x)}$. We compare

$$\begin{aligned}&\bigg(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\bigg)\bigg(\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\bigg)\phi(k,x)\\ &= \bigg(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\bigg)\Big(\pm 2\sqrt{k(x)}\Big)\phi_\pm(k,x)\\ &= \pm 2\sqrt{k(x)}\bigg(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x) + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\frac{1}{k(x)}\frac{\partial k(x)}{\partial x}\bigg)\phi_\pm(k,x)\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.12}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}&\bigg(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\bigg)\bigg(\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\bigg)\phi(k,x)\\ &= \bigg(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + k(x)^2 \pm \mathrm{i}\frac{\partial k(x)}{\partial x}\bigg)\phi(k,x)\\ &= \pm\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial k(x)}{\partial x}\phi(k,x)\\ &= \pm\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial k(x)}{\partial x}\frac{1}{\sqrt{k(x)}}\big(\phi_+(k,x) + \phi_-(k,x)\big)\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.13}$$

to establish

$$\left(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\right)\phi_{\pm}(k,x) = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\frac{1}{k(x)}\frac{\partial k(x)}{\partial x}\phi_{\mp}(k,x)\,. \tag{3.2.14}$$

We note that $k(x)^2 = k^2 - \dfrac{2M}{\hbar^2}V(x)$ implies

$$2k(x)\frac{\partial}{\partial x}k(x) = -\frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\frac{\partial V}{\partial x} = \frac{2M}{\hbar^2}F(x) \tag{3.2.15}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{k(x)}\frac{\partial}{\partial x}k(x) &= \frac{\big(M/\hbar^2\big)F(x)}{k(x)^2} = \frac{1}{2}\frac{F(x)}{\big(\hbar^2/(2M)\big)k(x)^2}\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\frac{F(x)}{E-V(x)}\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.16}$$

so that

$$\left(\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial x} \pm k(x)\right)\phi_{\pm}(k,x) = \frac{\mathrm{i}}{4}\frac{F(x)}{E-V(x)}\phi_{\mp}(k,x)\,. \tag{3.2.17}$$

This says that the *force* $F(x) = -\dfrac{\partial}{\partial x}V(x)$ is responsible for feeding the left-moving amplitude ϕ_- into the right-moving amplitude ϕ_+ and *vice versa* — the force gives rise to scattering events.

If the force is small, that is,

$$\left|\frac{F(x)}{E-V(x)}\right| \ll k(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\big(E-V(x)\big)} \tag{3.2.18}$$

or

$$\left|\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\frac{1}{k(x)}\right| \ll 1\,, \tag{3.2.19}$$

then we can neglect the right-hand side in (3.2.17) and have the simple approximative solutions

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_+(k,x) &= \phi_+(k,0)\exp\left(\mathrm{i}\int_0^x \mathrm{d}x'\,k(x')\right),\\ \phi_-(k,x) &= \phi_-(k,L)\exp\left(\mathrm{i}\int_x^L \mathrm{d}x'\,k(x')\right),\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.20}$$

for which

$$\begin{aligned}\phi_+(k,L) &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\alpha}\phi_+(k,0)\,,\\ \phi_-(k,0) &= \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\alpha}\phi_-(k,L)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.2.21}$$

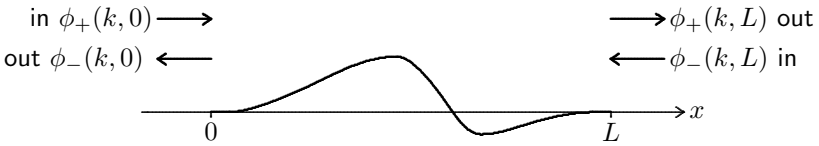
with the accumulated phase α given by

$$\alpha = \int_0^L \mathrm{d}x\, k(x)\,. \tag{3.2.22}$$

More generally, the "in" amplitudes $\phi_+(k,0), \phi_-(k,L)$ lead to "out" amplitudes $\phi_+(k,L), \phi_-(k,0)$ that are given by a linear transformation,

$$\begin{pmatrix} \phi_+(k,L) \\ \phi_-(k,0) \end{pmatrix} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\alpha} \begin{pmatrix} S_{++} & S_{+-} \\ S_{-+} & S_{--} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_+(k,0) \\ \phi_-(k,L) \end{pmatrix} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\alpha} \mathcal{S} \begin{pmatrix} \phi_+(k,0) \\ \phi_-(k,L) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{3.2.23}$$

pictorially:



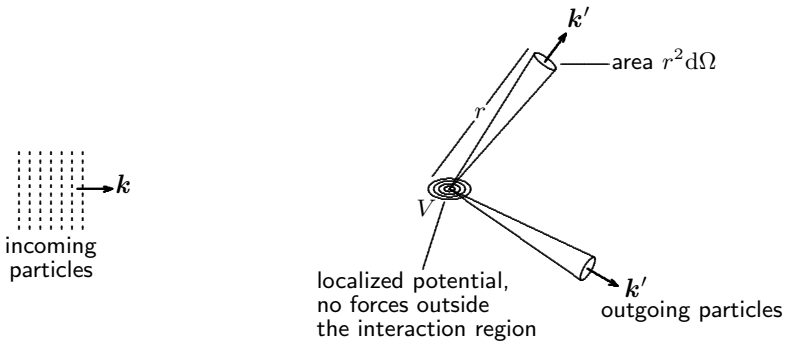
(3.2.24)

The 2×2 matrix $\mathcal{S}$ that turns the "in" amplitudes into the "out" amplitudes is the *scattering matrix* for this simple example.

3.3 Scattering by a localized potential

3.3.1 *Golden-rule approximation*

In the typical three-dimensional scattering situation, we have a localized potential $V(\boldsymbol{r})$ and particles (atoms, electrons, ...) approaching with rather well defined momentum:



(3.3.1)

The total Hamilton operator is

$$H = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2}_{=H_0} + \underbrace{V(\boldsymbol{R})}_{=H_1} \tag{3.3.2}$$

with a break-up into "unperturbed motion" governed by H_0, the kinetic energy $\boldsymbol{P}^2/2M$, and the perturbation H_1, the localized potential energy $V(\boldsymbol{R})$.

Although not really necessary, we shall usually regard the scattering potential as a function of the position operator only, $V = V(\boldsymbol{R})$, but there are more general cases in which a momentum dependence is present as well; the separable potential in Exercise 59 is an example. Most results do not rely on the assumption that V does not depend on $\boldsymbol{P}$, and the others are generalized rather easily.

The forces resulting from the potential $V(\boldsymbol{R})$ deflect the particle, which is to say that they induce transitions between the eigenstates of H_0, namely the states with definite momentum,

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{initial state: } \big|2\big\rangle = \big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\,, &\quad \boldsymbol{P}\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = \big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\hbar\boldsymbol{k}\,,\\
H_0\big|2\big\rangle = \big|2\big\rangle\frac{(\hbar k)^2}{2M} &\quad \text{with} \quad k = \big|\boldsymbol{k}\big|\,,\\
\text{final state: } \big\langle 1\big| = \big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|\,, &\quad \big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|\boldsymbol{P} = \hbar\boldsymbol{k}'\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|\,,\\
\big\langle 1\big|H_0 = \frac{(\hbar k')^2}{2M}\big\langle 1\big| &\quad \text{with} \quad k' = \big|\boldsymbol{k}'\big|\,.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.3.3}$$

We apply the golden rule of Section 2.4 and get

$$\text{transition rate} = \frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\Big|\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|V\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\Big|^2\,\delta\!\left(\frac{(\hbar k')^2}{2M} - \frac{(\hbar k)^2}{2M}\right) \tag{3.3.4}$$

which we need to sum over all final states. This summation is over all $\boldsymbol{k}'$ that point into the same direction, specified by the solid-angle element $\mathrm{d}\Omega$,

$$\text{summation} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \mathrm{d}\Omega \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}k'\, k'^2\,. \tag{3.3.5}$$

This takes us to

$$\text{transition rate} = \mathrm{d}\Omega\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}k'\, k'^2\delta\!\left(\frac{(\hbar k')^2}{2M} - \frac{(\hbar k)^2}{2M}\right)\Big|\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|V\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\Big|^2\,. \tag{3.3.6}$$

It is common and convenient and physically very meaningful, to normalize the rate to the incoming flux, because the number of scattering events per second depends on the scattering power of the potential but is also proportional to the number of particles approaching per second. To extract the scattering power of the potential, we therefore write

$$\text{transition rate} = (\text{incoming flux}) \times \frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}\,\mathrm{d}\Omega \tag{3.3.7}$$

and so introduce the *differential scattering cross section* $\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$. It is the effective transverse area of the target for scattering into the specified direction.

With the wave function

$$\psi_{\text{in}}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \langle \boldsymbol{r} | \boldsymbol{k} \rangle = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}}\,, \tag{3.3.8}$$

the incoming flux is the magnitude of the probability current

$$\boldsymbol{j}_{\text{in}} = \frac{\hbar}{M}\,\mathrm{Im}\big(\psi_{\text{in}}^{*}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi_{\text{in}}\big) = \frac{\hbar}{M}\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\boldsymbol{k}\,, \tag{3.3.9}$$

that is,

$$\text{incoming flux} = \frac{\hbar}{M}\frac{k}{(2\pi)^3}\,. \tag{3.3.10}$$

Accordingly,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \frac{M}{\hbar k}\frac{(2\pi)^4}{\hbar}\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}k'\,k'^2 \big|\langle \boldsymbol{k}' | V | \boldsymbol{k} \rangle\big|^2 \delta\!\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\big(k'^2 - k^2\big)\right) \tag{3.3.11}$$

is the golden-rule approximation for $\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$. We note that the delta function factor enforces *elastic* scattering here, that is, the scattered particle has the same kinetic energy as the incoming particle, no energy is transferred to the particle.

Inelastic scattering can also happen, of course; for example, when an electron is scattered by an atom and excites the atom during the scattering act. The outgoing electron would then have less kinetic energy than the incoming one, less by the amount needed for the excitation of the atom. You can easily envision even more complicated situations.

After processing the delta function in (3.3.11),

$$\delta\!\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\big(k'^2 - k^2\big)\right) = \frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\delta\big(k'^2 - k^2\big) = \frac{M}{\hbar^2}\frac{1}{k}\delta(k' - k)\,, \tag{3.3.12}$$

we evaluate the k' integral and arrive at

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \frac{(2\pi)^4 M^2}{\hbar^4} \left| \left\langle \boldsymbol{k}' \middle| V \middle| \boldsymbol{k} \right\rangle \right|^2 \Big|_{k' = k} , \tag{3.3.13}$$

the golden-rule approximation for the differential scattering cross section. When $V = V(\boldsymbol{R})$, the transition matrix element $\left\langle \boldsymbol{k}' \middle| V \middle| \boldsymbol{k} \right\rangle$ can be expressed as

$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle \boldsymbol{k}' \middle| V \middle| \boldsymbol{k} \right\rangle &= \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}) \left\langle \boldsymbol{k}' \middle| \boldsymbol{r} \right\rangle V(\boldsymbol{r}) \left\langle \boldsymbol{r} \middle| \boldsymbol{k} \right\rangle \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, V(\boldsymbol{r})\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} , \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.14}$$

essentially the Fourier transform of $V(\boldsymbol{r})$, so that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \left| \frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, V(\boldsymbol{r})\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} \right|^2_{k = k'} \tag{3.3.15}$$

is the golden-rule approximation for $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$ in the case of elastic potential scattering by $V = V(\boldsymbol{R})$.

A simplification occurs in the important situation of a spherically symmetric potential,

$$V(\boldsymbol{r}) = V(r) , \tag{3.3.16}$$

because then the dependence on the direction of the integration variable $\boldsymbol{r}$ is solely in the plane-wave factor

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\left|\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}'\right| r \cos(\vartheta)} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}qr\cos(\vartheta)} \tag{3.3.17}$$

with $q = \left|\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}'\right|$. We take $\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}'$ as the direction of the polar axis, the z axis of spherical coordinates, so that

$$\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}) \to 2\pi \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^2 \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\vartheta\, \sin(\vartheta) , \tag{3.3.18}$$

and arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} &\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, V(\boldsymbol{r})\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} = 2\pi \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^2 V(r) \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\vartheta\, \sin(\vartheta)\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}qr\cos(\vartheta)} \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^2 V(r) \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}qr\cos(\vartheta)}}{-\mathrm{i}qr} \Bigg|_{\vartheta = 0}^{\vartheta = \pi} = 4\pi \frac{1}{q} \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r V(r) \sin(qr) , \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.19}$$

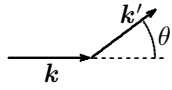
with the consequence

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \left| \frac{2M}{\hbar^2 q} \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, rV(r) \sin(qr) \right|^2 , \tag{3.3.20}$$

where

$$q = \left| \boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}' \right| = 2k \sin\Big(\frac{1}{2}\theta\Big) \tag{3.3.21}$$

identifies the deflection angle θ in accordance with



$$\boldsymbol{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{k}' = k^2 \cos(\theta)\,. \tag{3.3.22}$$

3.3.2 *Example: Yukawa potential*

As an illustrating example, we consider the so-called Yukawa* potential,

$$V(r) = \frac{V_0}{\kappa r}\, \mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r}\,, \tag{3.3.23}$$

which is a shielded Coulomb† potential with the range $1/\kappa$ determined by the parameter κ. We evaluate the required integral

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, rV(r) \sin(qr) &= \frac{V_0}{\kappa} \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\ \mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r} \sin(qr) \\ &= \frac{V_0}{\kappa}\, \mathrm{Im}\bigg(\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\ \mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r + \mathrm{i}qr} \bigg) \\ &= \frac{V_0}{\kappa}\, \mathrm{Im}\bigg(\frac{1}{\kappa - \mathrm{i}q} \bigg) = \frac{V_0}{\kappa} \frac{q}{\kappa^2 + q^2} \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.24}$$

and so get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \left| \frac{2M}{\hbar^2 q} \frac{V_0}{\kappa} \frac{q}{\kappa^2 + q^2} \right|^2 = \left| \frac{2MV_0/\kappa}{\hbar^2(\kappa^2 + q^2)} \right|^2 . \tag{3.3.25}$$

The combination of parameters

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} q^2 &= \frac{\hbar^2}{2M} \Big(2k \sin\Big(\frac{1}{2}\theta\Big) \Big)^2 = \frac{(\hbar k)^2}{2M} 4 \sin\Big(\frac{1}{2}\theta\Big)^2 \\ &= 4E \sin\Big(\frac{1}{2}\theta\Big)^2 \end{aligned} \tag{3.3.26}$$

*Hideki YUKAWA (1901–1981) †Charles-Augustin de COULOMB (1736–1806)

involves the energy of the scattered particle, and this invites us to associate an energy scale

$$E_0 = \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{2M} \tag{3.3.27}$$

with the range parameter κ. Then,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \left(\frac{V_0/\kappa}{E_0 + 4E\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\theta\right)^2}\right)^2 \tag{3.3.28}$$

is the compact result for $\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$. For large energy E, that is, large kinetic energy of the scattered particles, the differential cross section $\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} \propto (1/E)^2$ is small, as could be expected on physical grounds: It is more difficult to deflect a fast moving object than a slowly moving one.

3.3.3 *Rutherford cross section as a limit*

The Coulomb potential

$$V = -\frac{Ze^2}{r} \tag{3.3.29}$$

experienced by an electron (charge $-e$) in the electrostatic field of a nucleus (charge Ze) can be regarded as the limit of the Yukawa potential in the sense of

$$\kappa \to 0 \quad \text{with} \quad V_0/\kappa \to -Ze^2\,. \tag{3.3.30}$$

Then, $E_0 \to 0$ in (3.3.27) and (3.3.28) and

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} \to \left(\frac{V_0/\kappa}{4E\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\theta\right)^2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{16}\left(\frac{Ze^2}{E}\right)^2 \frac{1}{\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}\theta\right)^4}\,. \tag{3.3.31}$$

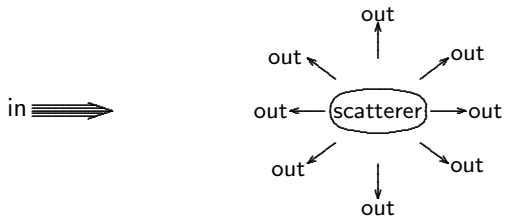
This is the famous *Rutherford** *cross section* for Coulomb scattering.

By a remarkable coincidence, we get the exact Rutherford cross section by the approximate golden-rule treatment, despite the fact that the formalism should not really apply to potentials with long-range forces, such as the Coulomb potential. Equally remarkable is the fact that this quantum mechanical cross section agrees perfectly with its classical analog. Actually, Rutherford derived it by purely classical arguments, that is, he applied Newton's† classical mechanics to the problem rather than the quantum mechanics that was only developed more than a decade later.

*Ernest Rutherford, first Baron Rutherford of Nelson (1871–1937)
†Isaac Newton (1643–1727)

3.4 Lippmann–Schwinger equation

In the general scattering situation



(3.4.1)

we characterize the "in" state as an eigenstate of the Hamilton operator H_0 of the unperturbed evolution,

$$H_0\big|\text{in}\big\rangle = \big|\text{in}\big\rangle E\,, \tag{3.4.2}$$

whereas the "out" state is an eigenstate of the full Hamilton operator to the *same* energy,

$$H\big|\text{out}\big\rangle = \big|\text{out}\big\rangle E\,, \quad H = H_0 + V\,, \tag{3.4.3}$$

so that $|\text{out}\rangle$ contains both $|\text{in}\rangle$ and the scatterer's contribution. The scattering potential $V = H - H_0$ is meant to be localized, or more precisely, it does not have noticeable effects at large distances. This property of V is quite essential because without it we could not possibly have such "in" states.

We are interested in the "out" state that is associated with the given "in" state and, therefore, we require

$$\big|\text{out}\big\rangle \to \big|\text{in}\big\rangle \quad \text{for} \quad V \to 0\,. \tag{3.4.4}$$

We have

$$V\big|\text{out}\big\rangle = (E - H_0)\big|\text{out}\big\rangle = (E - H_0)\big(\big|\text{out}\big\rangle - \big|\text{in}\big\rangle\big) \tag{3.4.5}$$

because $(E - H_0)|\text{in}\rangle = 0$. Now solving for $|\text{out}\rangle - |\text{in}\rangle$, the scatterer's contribution to $|\text{out}\rangle$, we get

$$\big|\text{out}\big\rangle - \big|\text{in}\big\rangle = (E - H_0)^{-1}V\big|\text{out}\big\rangle \tag{3.4.6}$$

or

$$\big|\text{out}\big\rangle = \big|\text{in}\big\rangle + (E - H_0)^{-1}V\big|\text{out}\big\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.7}$$

This has $|\text{out}\rangle = |\text{in}\rangle$ for $V = 0$ built into it all right, but it is suffering from a fundamental deficiency: the inverse operator $(E - H_0)^{-1}$ does not exist.

We encounter essentially the same problem in the perturbation theory for ground states, where we resolve it by restricting the inverse to the subspace orthogonal to the unperturbed state. This is the function of the operator Q_n in Section 6.5 of *Simple Systems*. This remedy is, however, not available in the present context because there is a continuum of scattering states so that we are in trouble even if we manage to remove $|\text{in}\rangle\langle\text{in}|$ from $(E - H_0)$. Other states have energies arbitrarily close to E and render $(E - H_0)^{-1}$ singular, and then there are, of course, all the other "in" states with exactly the same energy as the $|\text{in}\rangle$ under consideration, differing from it by other quantum numbers, such as those specifying the direction of the approach.

We must fix the problem with another tool, which is the addition of a small imaginary part to $E - H_0$, after which it does have an inverse,

$$\big|\text{out}_\pm\big\rangle = \big|\text{in}\big\rangle + (E - H_0 \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} V \big|\text{out}_\pm\big\rangle \tag{3.4.8}$$

with $0 < \epsilon \to 0$ eventually, at a late stage when there is no longer any ambiguity. Presently, we cannot decide whether a positive imaginary part or a negative one is the right choice or whether it is necessary (in fact, it is not) to consider more complicated ways of performing the limit $\epsilon \to 0$. Therefore, we postpone this decision about the sign in (3.4.8) until we will have learned enough about its right-hand side.

Let us turn the ket equation (3.4.8) into an equation for the wave functions

$$\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}) = \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|\text{out}_\pm\big\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|\text{in}\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.9}$$

that is,

$$\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) + \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|(E - H_0 \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1}\big|\boldsymbol{r}'\big\rangle \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}'\big|V\big|\text{out}_\pm\big\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.10}$$

Upon assuming, solely for the sake of simplicity, a potential energy that only depends on the position $\boldsymbol{R}$ but not on the momentum $\boldsymbol{P}$,

$$\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}'\big|V\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big) = V(\boldsymbol{r}')\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}'\big|\,, \tag{3.4.11}$$

we have

$$\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) + \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|(E - H_0 \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1}\big|\boldsymbol{r}'\big\rangle V(\boldsymbol{r}')\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}')\,, \tag{3.4.12}$$

where the dependence on the scattering potential is more explicit. The kernel in both the general (3.4.10) and the more specific (3.4.12),

$$\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|(E - H_0 \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1}\big|\boldsymbol{r}'\big\rangle = G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{r}'), \tag{3.4.13}$$

is a Green's* function by its nature and summarizes the net propagation effect of the unperturbed evolution.

In the most important, because most frequent, situation of

$$H_0 = \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2\,, \tag{3.4.14}$$

we can evaluate $G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{r}')$ quite explicitly. For this purpose, we introduce momentum eigenstates to write

$$(E - H_0 \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{p})\,\big|\boldsymbol{p}\big\rangle\left(E - \frac{\boldsymbol{p}^2}{2M} \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon\right)^{-1}\big\langle \boldsymbol{p}\big|\,, \tag{3.4.15}$$

and with

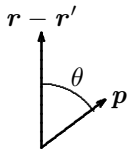
$$\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|\boldsymbol{p}\big\rangle\big\langle \boldsymbol{p}\big|\boldsymbol{r}'\big\rangle = \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{r}\,-\,\boldsymbol{r}')\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{p}/\hbar}}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\,, \tag{3.4.16}$$

we then get

$$G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}, \boldsymbol{r}') = \int \frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{p})}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{r}\,-\,\boldsymbol{r}')\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{p}/\hbar}}{E - \boldsymbol{p}^2/(2M) \pm \mathrm{i}\epsilon} \tag{3.4.17}$$

for the Green's function. The denominator depends only on the length $|\boldsymbol{p}|$ of the momentum variable $\boldsymbol{p}$ so that all directional dependence is contained in

$$(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}')\cdot\boldsymbol{p} = \big|\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'\big|\big|\boldsymbol{p}\big|\cos(\theta) \tag{3.4.18}$$



where θ is the angle between $\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'$ and $\boldsymbol{p}$. As we did in (3.3.18), we choose the coordinate system such that $\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'$ is along the z axis and then use spherical coordinates for the parameterization of the integration,

$$\begin{aligned} &(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{p}) = 2\pi\hbar^3 \mathrm{d}\kappa\,\kappa^2\,\mathrm{d}\theta\,\sin(\theta) \quad \text{with} \quad \hbar\kappa = \big|\boldsymbol{p}\big| \\ \text{and} \quad &(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}')\cdot\boldsymbol{p} = \hbar\kappa s\cos(\theta) \quad \text{with} \quad s = \big|\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'\big|\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.19}$$

*George GREEN (1793–1841)

where the lack of azimuthal dependence gives us the factor of 2π, and so we have

$$\begin{aligned} G_{\pm}(\boldsymbol{r},\boldsymbol{r}') &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\kappa\,\kappa^2 \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\,\sin(\theta)\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa s\cos(\theta)}}{E-(\hbar\kappa)^2/(2M)\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\kappa\,\frac{\kappa^2}{E-(\hbar\kappa)^2/(2M)\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa s\cos(\theta)}}{-\mathrm{i}\kappa s}\bigg|_{\theta=0}^{\pi} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\frac{2}{s}\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\kappa\,\frac{\kappa\sin(\kappa s)}{E-(\hbar\kappa)^2/(2M)\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.20}$$

We now write the denominator as

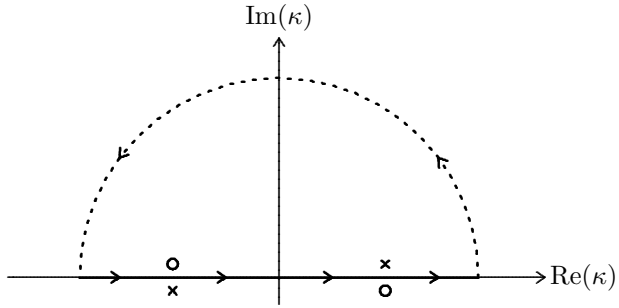
$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\Bigg(\underbrace{\frac{2ME}{\hbar^2}}_{=k^2\,,\,k>0} -\kappa^2\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon\Bigg) &= \frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\big((k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)^2-\kappa^2\big) \\ &= -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\big(\kappa-(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)\big)\big(\kappa+(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)\big)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.21}$$

keeping in mind that ϵ is just an infinitesimal positive quantity. We note that the integrand is even in κ, which allows the extension of the integration range $0\cdots\infty$ to $-\infty\cdots\infty$, so that

$$\begin{aligned} G_{\pm}(\boldsymbol{r},\boldsymbol{r}') &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\left(-\frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\right)\frac{1}{s}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\mathrm{d}\kappa\,\frac{\kappa\sin(\kappa s)}{\big(\kappa-(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)\big)\big(\kappa+(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)\big)} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\left(-\frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\right)\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}s}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\mathrm{d}\kappa\,\frac{\kappa\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa s}}{\big(\kappa-(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)\big)\big(\kappa+(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)\big)} \\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\left(-\frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\right)\frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}s}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\mathrm{d}\kappa\left(\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa s}}{\kappa-(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)}+\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa s}}{\kappa+(k\pm\mathrm{i}\epsilon)}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.22}$$

In the second step, we replace $\sin(\kappa s)\to\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\kappa s}$, which is permissible because the additional $\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}}\cos(\kappa s)$ term does not contribute to the value of the integral because it is multiplied by a function that is odd in κ.

The remaining integral is a standard example for contour integration with the aid of residues. In fact, a very similar integral appears in Section 5.4 of *Basic Matters*. The integration along the k axis is closed by a half-circle in the upper half-plane of the complex κ plane,



poles at $\pm(k+\mathrm{i}\epsilon)$ for G_+ marked by ×
poles at $\pm(k-\mathrm{i}\epsilon)$ for G_- marked by ○ (3.4.23)

We pick up the residue at $\kappa = k + \mathrm{i}\epsilon$ for G_+ and that at $\kappa = -k + \mathrm{i}\epsilon$ for G_- so that

$$\begin{aligned} G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r},\boldsymbol{r}') &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^2}\left(-\frac{2M}{\hbar^2}\right)\frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}s}2\pi\mathrm{i}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\pm k+\mathrm{i}\epsilon)s} \\ &= -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}ks}}{s}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon s}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.24}$$

It is now safe to perform the $\epsilon \to 0$ limit, and the outcome is

$$G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r},\boldsymbol{r}') = -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}k|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}}{|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|} \tag{3.4.25}$$

with $k = \sqrt{2ME/\hbar^2}$.

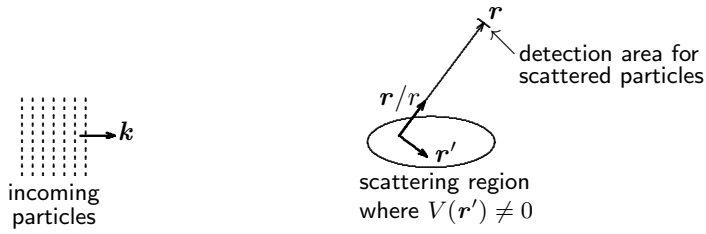
We have then a more explicit version of (3.4.12),

$$\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) - \frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}k|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}}{|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}V(\boldsymbol{r}')\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}')\,, \tag{3.4.26}$$

and can finally address the question of the correct choice of sign in (3.4.8). For this purpose, we consider the asymptotic form, the large-r version, of $G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}')$, which involves

$$\begin{aligned} |\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'| &= \sqrt{r^2+r'^2-2\boldsymbol{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'} = r\sqrt{1-2\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'/r+(r'/r)^2} \\ &= r\left(1-\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'/r+O\big((r'/r)^2\big)\right) \\ &= r-\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'+O\big(r'^2/r\big)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.27}$$

The integration variable $\boldsymbol{r}'$ is limited to the scattering region, where $V(\boldsymbol{r}') \neq 0$, so that r'/r is negligibly small for large r,



(3.4.28)

Therefore, the asymptotic form of $G_\pm$ is

$$G_\pm(\boldsymbol{r},\boldsymbol{r}') \cong -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mp\mathrm{i}k\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'} \tag{3.4.29}$$

and the scattered wave function is

$$\psi_{\pm,\mathrm{scat}}(\boldsymbol{r}) = -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\;\mathrm{e}^{\mp\mathrm{i}k\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'}V(\boldsymbol{r}')\psi_\pm(\boldsymbol{r}')\,. \tag{3.4.30}$$

Its r dependence is dominated by the prefactor $\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}kr}/r$, which gives rise to a probability current of

$$\boldsymbol{j}_{\mathrm{scat}}(\boldsymbol{r}) \propto \mathrm{Im}\left(\frac{1}{r}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mp\mathrm{i}kr}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\frac{1}{r}\,\mathrm{e}^{\pm\mathrm{i}kr}\right) = \pm\frac{k}{r^2}\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\,, \tag{3.4.31}$$

which is radially *outgoing* for the upper sign and *incoming* for the lower sign. Clearly, then, the upper sign is right for the situation depicted in (3.4.1), and this is the choice to be made in (3.4.8).

In summary, now writing simply $|\mathrm{out}\rangle$ for $|\mathrm{out}_+\rangle$ and $\psi(\boldsymbol{r})$ for $\psi_+(\boldsymbol{r})$, we have the ket equation

$$\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + (E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1}V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle \tag{3.4.32}$$

and the wave-function equation

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) - \frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}k|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}}{|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}\,V(\boldsymbol{r}')\psi(\boldsymbol{r}') \tag{3.4.33}$$

for $V = V(\boldsymbol{R})$ or, after undoing the step from (3.4.10) to (3.4.12),

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) - \frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}k|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}}{|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|}\,\big\langle\boldsymbol{r}'\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle \tag{3.4.34}$$

for more general scattering potentials. These equations are of great importance in scattering theory, and all three are known as the *Lippmann–Schwinger equation*.

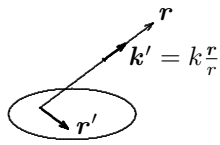
We also have the asymptotic form that applies far away from the scattering region,

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) - \frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\ \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}'\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{r}'}\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}'\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.35}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{k}' = k\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r} \tag{3.4.36}$$

is the direction of the outgoing current, expressed as a wave vector:



(3.4.37)

We take a plane wave propagating with wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ for the incoming amplitude,

$$\phi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{r}}\,, \tag{3.4.38}$$

and then have the asymptotic form

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\left(\underbrace{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{r}}}_{\substack{\text{incoming}\\ \text{plane wave}}} + \underbrace{\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}f\big(\boldsymbol{k}',\boldsymbol{k}\big)}_{\substack{\text{outgoing, scattered}\\ \text{spherical wave}}}\right) \tag{3.4.39}$$

with the *scattering amplitude*

$$\begin{aligned} f\big(\boldsymbol{k}',\boldsymbol{k}\big) &= -(2\pi)^{3/2}\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2}\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\ \underbrace{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}'\,\cdot\,\boldsymbol{r}'}}_{=(2\pi)^{3/2}\langle \boldsymbol{k}'|\boldsymbol{r}'\rangle}\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}'\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle \\ &= -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\,\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|\boldsymbol{r}'\big\rangle\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}'\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.40}$$

or

$$f\big(\boldsymbol{k}',\boldsymbol{k}\big) = -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.41}$$

The $\boldsymbol{k}$ dependence of $f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})$ is implicit, and complicated, inasmuch as it is contained in $|\text{out}\rangle$ which is the solution of the Lippmann–Schwinger equation (3.4.32) for $|\text{in}\rangle = |\boldsymbol{k}\rangle$.

The probability current of the outgoing spherical wave is

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{j}_{\text{out}} &= \frac{\hbar}{M}\,\text{Im}\left(\frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})^*\boldsymbol{\nabla}\frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\right)\\ &= \frac{\hbar}{M}\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\frac{1}{r^2}\left(\left|f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\right|^2\,\text{Im}\left(r\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\frac{1}{r}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}\right)\right.\\ &\qquad\left.+\,\text{Im}\Big(f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})^*\boldsymbol{\nabla}f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\Big)\right)\\ &= \frac{\hbar}{M}\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\frac{1}{r^2}\left|f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\right|^2 k\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r} + \cdots\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.42}$$

where the ellipsis stands for the terms that result from

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}) = \boldsymbol{\nabla}f\Big(k\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}, \boldsymbol{k}\Big)\,. \tag{3.4.43}$$

Since $\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}$ depends only on the direction of $\boldsymbol{r}$ but not on its length r, these terms are orthogonal to the radial direction $\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}$ and do not contribute to the outgoing probability flux.

This outgoing flux is the flux through solid angle $\mathrm{d}\Omega$ in the direction of $\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}$, with the surface element $\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{S} = \frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}r^2\mathrm{d}\Omega$. Therefore, the outgoing flux is

$$\boldsymbol{j}_{\text{out}}\cdot\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}r^2\mathrm{d}\Omega = \frac{\hbar}{M}\frac{k}{(2\pi)^3}\left|f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\right|^2\mathrm{d}\Omega\,. \tag{3.4.44}$$

We compare it with the incoming flux per unit area, that is, the incoming probability current density,

$$\boldsymbol{j}_{\text{in}} = \frac{\hbar}{M}\,\text{Im}\left(\frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}}\right) = \frac{\hbar}{M}\frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\boldsymbol{k}\,, \tag{3.4.45}$$

and identify the differential scattering cross section in accordance with

$$\boldsymbol{j}_{\text{out}}\cdot r^2\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\mathrm{d}\Omega = \left|\boldsymbol{j}_{\text{in}}\right|\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}\mathrm{d}\Omega\,, \tag{3.4.46}$$

with the outcome

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \left|f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\right|^2. \tag{3.4.47}$$

This important relation between the differential cross section and the scattering amplitude justifies the name chosen for $f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})$: you get the scattering probability by squaring the scattering amplitude.

3.4.1 *Born approximation*

Whenever it is physically reasonable to expect that the effect of the scattering potential is not dominating, such as when the energy of the incoming particles is large, $|\text{out}\rangle \cong |\text{in}\rangle$ should be a good approximation. In any case, $|\text{out}\rangle - |\text{in}\rangle$ is of first order in V (to lowest order) and so is, therefore, $f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})$. Accordingly, in lowest order in V, we get $f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})$, and then $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$, by putting $|\text{out}\rangle \cong |\text{in}\rangle$. This approximation gives

$$f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}) = -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M \langle \boldsymbol{k}' | V | \boldsymbol{k} \rangle \tag{3.4.48}$$

in general and

$$\begin{aligned} f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}) &= -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M \int \frac{(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})}{(2\pi)^3}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} V(\boldsymbol{r}) \\ &= -\frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} V(\boldsymbol{r}) \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.49}$$

if V depends on $\boldsymbol{R}$ only. In the latter case, we thus get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \left| \frac{M}{2\pi\hbar^2} \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{k} - \boldsymbol{k}') \cdot \boldsymbol{r}} V(\boldsymbol{r}) \right|^2 , \tag{3.4.50}$$

which is exactly the golden-rule result of (3.3.15). In the context of the Lippmann–Schwinger equation, one speaks of the (first-order or lowest-order) *Born approximation*. As we shall see shortly, it is the leading term in a systematic expansion.

3.4.2 *Transition operator*

When it comes to determining the cross section, $|\text{out}\rangle$ itself does not matter as much as $V|\text{out}\rangle$, and the mapping $|\text{in}\rangle \to V|\text{out}\rangle$ is more relevant than the mapping $|\text{in}\rangle \to |\text{out}\rangle$. One introduces, therefore, the so-called *transition operator* T by

$$|\text{in}\rangle \to V|\text{out}\rangle = T|\text{in}\rangle\,. \tag{3.4.51}$$

With $|\mathrm{in}\rangle = |\boldsymbol{k}\rangle$, the scattering amplitude (3.4.41) is

$$f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}) = -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\langle \boldsymbol{k}'|T|\boldsymbol{k}\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.52}$$

where the essential ingredient is the matrix element of T for the ket $|\boldsymbol{k}\rangle$ of the incoming plane wave with wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}$ and the bra $\langle \boldsymbol{k}'|$ of the outgoing plane wave with wave vector $\boldsymbol{k}'$.

On the search for an equation that determines the transition operator directly, that is, without the need of first finding $|\mathrm{out}\rangle$, we return to the ket version (3.4.32) of the Lippmann–Schwinger equation,

$$\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + (E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} V \big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.53}$$

and note that it implies

$$\begin{aligned} T\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle &= V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = V\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + V(E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} T\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle \\ &= \Big(V + V(E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} T\Big)\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.54}$$

Since this must be true for all "in" kets $|\mathrm{in}\rangle$ (of energy E), we infer that

$$T = V + V(E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} T \tag{3.4.55}$$

must hold.

This equation has a structure we have seen before, notably in (2.2.10). As we did there, here we also generate a systematic sequence of approximations by the iteration

$$T_{n+1} = V + V(E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} T_n\,, \tag{3.4.56}$$

starting with $T_1 = V$, which is the analog of (2.2.11). Upon writing

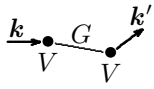
$$G = (E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1} \tag{3.4.57}$$

for the Green's operator with H_0, we have

$$\begin{aligned} T_2 &= V + VGV\,, \\ T_3 &= V + VGV + VGVGV\,, \\ T_4 &= V + VGV + VGVGV + VGVGVGV\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.58}$$

and so forth. Thinking of this graphically, we note that

T_1 : single scattering

T_2 : $T_1 +$  add double scattering

T_3 : $T_2 +$ add triple scattering (3.4.59)

and so forth.

What we get is the series

$$T = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} V(GV)^{k-1} \tag{3.4.60}$$

and its truncations

$$T_n = \sum_{k=1}^{n} V(GV)^{k-1} = V + VGV + \cdots + \underbrace{VGV\cdots VGV}_{n\,\text{times}\,V}, \tag{3.4.61}$$

which are known as *the* Born series and its nth-order approximation. For $n = 1$, we have $T_1 = V$, the first-order approximation with which the recursion (3.4.56) starts. Using $T \cong T_1 = V$ is, of course, just the Born approximation of Section 3.4.1.

3.4.3 *Optical theorem*

For $\boldsymbol{k}' = \boldsymbol{k}$, we have *forward scattering*, that is, the scattered spherical wave is aligned with the incoming plane wave, so that they can and will interfere. In particular, if there is a rather solid object in the way, we get a shadow of no or low intensity, which is to say that the interference must be destructive. More generally, the interference will lead to a *reduction* of the total forward flux because what is scattered aside can no longer continue to propagate in the forward direction. Not surprisingly, then, there is a relation between $f(\boldsymbol{k}, \boldsymbol{k})$, the forward scattering amplitude, and the total cross section σ. This relation is the *optical theorem* stated in (3.4.74).

To derive it, we use the definition of the transition operator in (3.4.51) for $|\mathrm{in}\rangle = |\boldsymbol{k}\rangle$,

$$T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle \tag{3.4.62}$$

and its adjoint

$$\big\langle\boldsymbol{k}\big|T^\dagger = \big\langle\mathrm{out}\big|V\,, \tag{3.4.63}$$

to establish first

$$\begin{aligned} f\big(\boldsymbol{k},\boldsymbol{k}\big)^* &= -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\big\langle\boldsymbol{k}\big|T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle^* = -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\big\langle\boldsymbol{k}\big|T^\dagger\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle \\ &= -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\big\langle\mathrm{out}\big|V\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.64}$$

The ket version (3.4.32) of the Lippmann–Schwinger equation tells us that

$$\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle = \big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle - (E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)^{-1}V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle \tag{3.4.65}$$

so that

$$f\big(\boldsymbol{k},\boldsymbol{k}\big)^* = -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\left(\big\langle\mathrm{out}\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle - \big\langle\mathrm{out}\big|V\frac{1}{E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon}V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle\right) \tag{3.4.66}$$

or with (3.4.62) and (3.4.63)

$$f\big(\boldsymbol{k},\boldsymbol{k}\big)^* = -\left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\left(\big\langle\mathrm{out}\big|V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle - \big\langle\boldsymbol{k}\big|T^\dagger\frac{1}{E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon}T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\right). \tag{3.4.67}$$

We proceed by utilizing the identity (2.5.58) for $x = E - H_0$,

$$\left.\frac{1}{E - H_0 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon}\right|_{\epsilon\,\to\,0} = \mathcal{P}\frac{1}{E - H_0} - \mathrm{i}\pi\delta(E - H_0)\,, \tag{3.4.68}$$

and extract the imaginary part,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Im}\Big(f(\boldsymbol{k},\boldsymbol{k})\Big) &= -\,\mathrm{Im}\Big(f(\boldsymbol{k},\boldsymbol{k})^*\Big) \\ &= \left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\pi\,\big\langle\boldsymbol{k}\big|T^\dagger\delta(E - H_0)T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle \\ &= \left(\frac{2\pi}{\hbar}\right)^2 M\pi\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k}')\,\big\langle\boldsymbol{k}\big|T^\dagger\big|\boldsymbol{k}'\big\rangle\;\delta\left(E - \frac{(\hbar k')^2}{2M}\right)\big\langle\boldsymbol{k}'\big|T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.69}$$

where we have used the completeness of the $|\boldsymbol{k}'\rangle$ states and the eigenvalue equation $H_0|\boldsymbol{k}'\rangle = |\boldsymbol{k}'\rangle(\hbar k')^2/(2M)$.

Now, recalling the fundamental link (3.4.52) between the transition operator and the scattering amplitude,

$$\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = -\left(\frac{\hbar}{2\pi}\right)^2 \frac{1}{M} f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\,, \tag{3.4.70}$$

we note that

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}\big|T^\dagger\big|\boldsymbol{k}'\big\rangle\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = \big|\big\langle \boldsymbol{k}'\big|T\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle\big|^2 &= \left(\frac{\hbar}{2\pi}\right)^4 \frac{1}{M^2}\big|f(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k})\big|^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{\hbar}{2\pi}\right)^4 \frac{1}{M^2}\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.71}$$

And upon using (3.3.12) once more,

$$\delta\left(E - \frac{(\hbar k')^2}{2M}\right) = \delta\left(\frac{(\hbar k)^2}{2M} - \frac{(\hbar k')^2}{2M}\right) = \frac{M}{\hbar^2 k}\delta(k - k')\,, \tag{3.4.72}$$

we get

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{Im}\Big(f(\boldsymbol{k}, \boldsymbol{k})\Big) &= \frac{1}{4\pi k}\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{k}')\,\delta\big(k - k'\big)\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} \\ &= \frac{1}{4\pi k}\underbrace{\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}k'\,{k'}^2\delta\big(k - k'\big)}_{=k^2}\underbrace{\int \mathrm{d}\Omega\,\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}}_{=\sigma} = \frac{k}{4\pi}\sigma \end{aligned} \tag{3.4.73}$$

and finally arrive at

$$\sigma = \frac{4\pi}{k}\,\mathrm{Im}\Big(f\big(\boldsymbol{k}, \boldsymbol{k}\big)\Big)\,. \tag{3.4.74}$$

This is the famous *optical theorem*, first established by Bohr, Peierls,* and Placzek,† but as the name indicates, the theorem has a historical precursor and analog in classical optics.

3.4.4 *Example of an exact solution*

There are very few examples for which the Lippmann–Schwinger equation has an exact analytical solution. One such example is the separable potential of Exercise 59,

$$V = \big|\mathrm{s}\big\rangle E_0\big\langle \mathrm{s}\big| \quad \text{with} \quad \big\langle \mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{s}\big\rangle = 1\,. \tag{3.4.75}$$

*Rudolf Ernst PEIERLS (1907–1995) †George PLACZEK (1905–1955)

Here, we have

$$\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + GV\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + G\big|\mathrm{s}\big\rangle E_0\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.76}$$

and we first determine $\langle\mathrm{s}|\mathrm{out}\rangle$ from

$$\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + \underbrace{\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|G\big|\mathrm{s}\big\rangle E_0}_{=\mathrm{tr}(GV)}\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.77}$$

namely

$$\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \frac{\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle}{1-\mathrm{tr}(GV)}\,. \tag{3.4.78}$$

The ket $|\mathrm{out}\rangle$ itself is then known,

$$\begin{aligned}\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle &= \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + G\big|\mathrm{s}\big\rangle E_0\,\frac{\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle}{1-\mathrm{tr}(GV)}\\ &= \big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle + \frac{GV\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle}{1-\mathrm{tr}(GV)}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{3.4.79}$$

and we get the transition operator from its definition

$$T\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle = V\big|\mathrm{out}\big\rangle = \left(V + \frac{VGV}{1-\mathrm{tr}(GV)}\right)\big|\mathrm{in}\big\rangle\,, \tag{3.4.80}$$

that is,

$$T = V + \frac{VGV}{1-\mathrm{tr}(GV)}\,. \tag{3.4.81}$$

Since $V = |\mathrm{s}\rangle E_0\langle\mathrm{s}|$ here, we have $VGV = V\mathrm{tr}(GV)$ and

$$T = \frac{V}{1-\mathrm{tr}(GV)} \tag{3.4.82}$$

is the final compact expression.

3.5 Partial waves

If the scattering potential is spherically symmetric, $V(\boldsymbol{r}) = V(r)$, then the Hamilton operator $H = \boldsymbol{P}^2/(2M) + V(R)$ commutes with the angular momentum vector operator $\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}$,

$$\big[H, \boldsymbol{L}\big] = 0\,. \tag{3.5.1}$$

Therefore, recalling a lesson in Section 4.4 of *Simple Systems*, we can have a basis set of states that are common eigenstates of H, $\boldsymbol{L}^2$, and L_3,

$$\begin{aligned} H\big|E,l,m\big\rangle &= \big|E,l,m\big\rangle E\,, \\ \boldsymbol{L}^2\big|E,l,m\big\rangle &= \big|E,l,m\big\rangle \hbar^2 l(l+1)\,, \\ L_z\big|E,l,m\big\rangle &= \big|E,l,m\big\rangle \hbar m\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.2}$$

with $m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \ldots, \pm l$ for the given l value, which itself is an integer, $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, and the energy E can, and usually will, depend on the quantum number l but not on m. We further recall from *Simple Systems* that the position wave function $\langle \boldsymbol{r}|E,l,m\rangle$ is conveniently written as

$$\big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|E,l,m\big\rangle = \frac{1}{r} u_l(r) \mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\vartheta,\varphi)\,, \tag{3.5.3}$$

where r, ϑ, φ are the usual spherical coordinates of $\boldsymbol{r}$ and $\mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\vartheta,\varphi)$ is one of the spherical harmonics. The radial function $u_l(r)$ obeys the radial Schrödinger equation

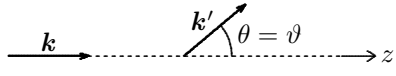
$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + \frac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2} + V(r)\right) u_l(r) = E u_l(r)\,, \tag{3.5.4}$$

where the "centrifugal potential" $\dfrac{\hbar^2 l(l+1)}{2Mr^2}$ is added to the physical potential energy $V(r)$.

We apply these matters to the scattering situation. As a consequence of the spherical symmetry, all directions in space are equivalent, and so we can agree to have the incoming plane wave propagating in the z direction, $\boldsymbol{k} = k\boldsymbol{e}_z$ with $k > 0$. Then,

$$\phi(r) = \big\langle \boldsymbol{r}\big|\boldsymbol{k}\big\rangle = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kz} = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\cos(\theta)}\,, \tag{3.5.5}$$

recognizing that the polar angle ϑ of spherical coordinates is actually the deflection angle θ,



(3.5.6)

Therefore, the expansion of $\phi(\boldsymbol{r})$ into a sum of the form $\displaystyle\sum_{lm} \frac{1}{r} u_l(r) \mathrm{Y}_{lm}(\vartheta,\varphi)$ will only involve the φ-independent $m = 0$ terms, for which $\mathrm{Y}_{l0}(\vartheta,\varphi) \propto \mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\vartheta)\big)$ is essentially the lth Legendre* polynomial of $\cos(\vartheta)$. In short,

*Adrien Marie LEGENDRE (1752–1833)

we have the *partial-wave expansion*

$$\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\cos(\theta)} = \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (2l+1)\mathrm{i}^l \mathrm{j}_l(kr) \mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\theta)\big) \tag{3.5.7}$$

of the plane wave $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kz}$, whereby $(2l+1)\mathrm{i}^l\mathrm{j}_l(kr)$ is a convenient way of writing what plays the role of $\frac{1}{r}u_l(r)$ here. The functions $\mathrm{j}_l(kr)$ thus defined are known as the *spherical Bessel* functions*. We state them explicitly by invoking the orthonormality relation of the Legendre polynomials,

$$\frac{1}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} \mathrm{d}\zeta\ \mathrm{P}_l(\zeta)\mathrm{P}_{l'}(\zeta) = \frac{\delta_{ll'}}{2l+1}\,, \tag{3.5.8}$$

so that

$$\mathrm{i}^l \mathrm{j}_l(kr) = \frac{1}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} \mathrm{d}\zeta\ \mathrm{P}_l(\zeta)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\zeta}\,. \tag{3.5.9}$$

The differential equation obeyed by $r\mathrm{j}_l(kr)$ is (3.5.4), the radial Schrödinger equation for $u_l(r)$, with $V(r) = 0$ and $E = (\hbar k)^2/(2M)$, that is,

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + k^2\right) r\mathrm{j}_l(kr) = 0\,. \tag{3.5.10}$$

For the present application to scattering, we do not need to know the $\mathrm{j}_l(kr)$s in detail, but we must understand their asymptotic form for $kr \gg 1$. This is available by an integration by parts,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}^l j_l(kr) &= \frac{1}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} \mathrm{d}\zeta\ \mathrm{P}_l(\zeta)\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\zeta}}{\mathrm{i}kr} \\ &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{P}_l(\zeta)\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\zeta}}{\mathrm{i}kr}\bigg|_{\zeta=-1}^{+1}}_{\propto 1/(kr)} - \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}\int_{-1}^{1} \mathrm{d}\zeta\ \frac{\partial \mathrm{P}_l(\zeta)}{\partial\zeta}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\zeta}}{\mathrm{i}kr}}_{\substack{\text{terms } \propto (kr)^{-2}, (kr)^{-3}, \ldots \\ \text{obtained by successive} \\ \text{integrations by parts}}} \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.11}$$

so that the leading asymptotic terms are

$$\mathrm{i}^l \mathrm{j}_l(kr) \cong \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{\mathrm{P}_l(+1)}_{=1}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{\mathrm{i}kr} - \frac{1}{2}\underbrace{\mathrm{P}_l(-1)}_{=(-1)^l=\mathrm{i}^{2l}}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}}{\mathrm{i}kr}\,, \tag{3.5.12}$$

*Friedrich Wilhelm Bessel (1784–1846)

and we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{j}_l(kr) &\cong \frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}kr}\Big(\mathrm{i}^{-l}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr} - \mathrm{i}^{l}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}\Big)\\ &= \frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}kr}\Big(\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr\,-\,\mathrm{i}l\pi/2} - \,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr\,+\,\mathrm{i}l\pi/2}\Big)\\ &= \frac{1}{kr}\sin\Big(kr - l\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\end{aligned} \tag{3.5.13}$$

for $kr \gg 1$.

We note that

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(\boldsymbol{r}) &\cong \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\sum_{l=0}^{\infty}(2l+1)\mathrm{i}^l\frac{1}{kr}\sin\Big(kr - l\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\theta)\big)\\ &= \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\sum_{l=0}^{\infty}(2l+1)\Big(\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{2\mathrm{i}kr} - (-1)^l\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}}{2\mathrm{i}kr}\Big)\mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\theta)\big)\end{aligned} \tag{3.5.14}$$

consists of a superposition of outgoing spherical waves $\propto \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}/r$ and incoming spherical waves $\propto \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}/r$. The total wave function

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \phi(\boldsymbol{r}) + \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}f\big(\boldsymbol{k}',\boldsymbol{k}\big) \tag{3.5.15}$$

has an additional outgoing spherical wave, the amplitude of the scattered wave. As a consequence, the $\psi_l(kr)$s in the partial-wave expansion

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\sum_{l}(2l+1)\mathrm{i}^l\psi_l(kr)\mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\theta)\big)\,, \tag{3.5.16}$$

which obey the differential equation (3.5.4) for $u_l(r) = r\psi_l(kr)$,

$$\Big(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} - \frac{2M}{\hbar^2}V(r) + k^2\Big)r\psi_l(kr) = 0 \tag{3.5.17}$$

for all r, and the $V = 0$ equation (3.5.10)

$$\Big(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} - \frac{l(l+1)}{r^2} + k^2\Big)r\psi_l(kr) = 0 \tag{3.5.18}$$

in the asymptotic region ($kr \gg 1$) of present interest, must be such that

$$kr \gg 1: \quad kr\psi_l(kr) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_l}\sin\Big(kr - l\frac{\pi}{2} + \delta_l\Big)\,. \tag{3.5.19}$$

This is the only option allowed by the asymptotic form of the differential equation subject to the constraint that the incoming spherical wave in

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{i}^l \psi_l(kr) &\cong \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_l} \frac{\mathrm{i}^l}{kr} \sin\Big(kr - l\frac{\pi}{2} + \delta_l\Big) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}kr} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_l}\, \mathrm{e}^{\frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\pi l} \Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\pi l + \mathrm{i}\delta_l} - \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}\pi l - \mathrm{i}\delta_l} \Big) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}kr} \Big(\underbrace{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr + 2\mathrm{i}\delta_l}}_{\substack{\text{outgoing,} \\ \text{modified}}} - \underbrace{(-1)^l\, \mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}kr}}_{\substack{\text{incoming,} \\ \text{as before}}} \Big) \end{aligned} \tag{3.5.20}$$

is not altered. Thus, the net effect of the scattering potential is to introduce the *scattering phases* δ_l in

$$\mathrm{j}_l(kr) \cong \frac{1}{kr} \sin\Big(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi l\Big) \longrightarrow \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_l}}{kr} \sin\Big(kr - \frac{1}{2}\pi l + \delta_l\Big) \tag{3.5.21}$$

and the scattering amplitude is then obtained as

$$f\big(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}\big) = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (2l+1) \frac{1}{2\mathrm{i}} \Big(\mathrm{e}^{2\mathrm{i}\delta_l} - 1 \Big) \mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\theta)\big)\,. \tag{3.5.22}$$

We recognize that $f\big(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}\big)$ depends on θ predominantly (and on k through the k dependence of the δ_ls) and write this as

$$f(\theta) = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (2l+1)\, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_l} \sin(\delta_l)\, P_l\big(\cos(\theta)\big)\,, \tag{3.5.23}$$

which is the partial-wave expansion for the scattering amplitude. The problem of determining the scattering amplitude $f\big(\boldsymbol{k}', \boldsymbol{k}\big) = f(\theta)$ is thus reduced to the calculation of the scattering phases δ_l. It is worth emphasizing that this expression for $f(\theta)$ is exact; it does not involve any approximations. Approximations will, however, have to be introduced, as a rule, when calculating the δ_ls.

The total cross section is easily obtained with the aid of the optical theorem of (3.4.74),

$$\sigma = \frac{4\pi}{k} \operatorname{Im}\big(f(\theta = 0)\big)\,, \tag{3.5.24}$$

inasmuch as $\boldsymbol{k}' = \boldsymbol{k}$ means $\theta = 0$ here. We have

$$\operatorname{Im}\Big(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_l} \sin(\delta_l) \Big) = \sin(\delta_l)^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{P}_l\big(\cos(\theta) = 1\big) = 1 \tag{3.5.25}$$

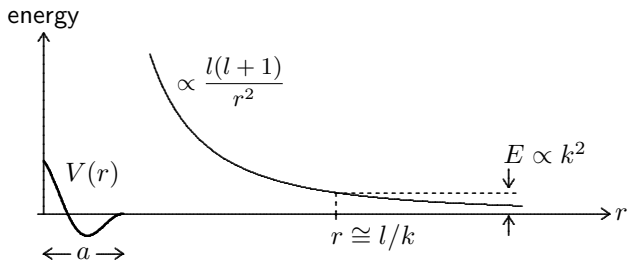
so that

$$\sigma = \frac{4\pi}{k^2} \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (2l+1) \sin(\delta_l)^2 \tag{3.5.26}$$

states the total cross section in terms of the scattering phases.

3.6 *s*-wave scattering

At low energies, the centrifugal potential $\propto l(l+1)/r^2$ suppresses the wave function at short distances,



(3.6.1)

and then there is little or no effect of the scattering potential — except for the *s-waves* to $l = 0$, for which there is no centrifugal barrier. Low-energy scattering is, therefore, completely dominated by the $l = 0$ sector, inasmuch as $\delta_l \cong 0$ is a very good approximation for $l > 0$ when k is sufficiently small, more precisely, when

$$k \ll \frac{1}{a}\,, \quad a = \text{range of } V(r)\,. \tag{3.6.2}$$

As an example of a short-range potential, we consider the hard-sphere potential of Exercise 63,

$$V(r) = \begin{cases} V_0 & \text{for} \quad r < a\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad r > a\,, \end{cases} \tag{3.6.3}$$

with $V_0 > 0$ (repulsive potential) or $V_0 < 0$ (attractive potential). We have then

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + k^2 \right) u_0(r) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad r > a \tag{3.6.4}$$

and

$$\left(\frac{\partial^2}{\partial r^2} + k^2 - \frac{2MV_0}{\hbar^2}\right) u_0(r) = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad r < a\,. \tag{3.6.5}$$

The $r > a$ part of the solution is the right-hand side of (3.5.19) for $l = 0$,

$$u_0(r) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_0} \sin(kr + \delta_0) \quad \text{for} \quad r > a\,. \tag{3.6.6}$$

For $r < a$, we distinguish

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{(A)}\ k^2 - \frac{2MV_0}{\hbar^2} = \kappa^2 > 0\,, \\ &\text{(B)}\ k^2 - \frac{2MV_0}{\hbar^2} = -\kappa^2 < 0\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.6.7}$$

with $\kappa > 0$ in both cases, and write

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{(A)}\ u_0(r) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_0} C \sin(\kappa r)\,, \\ &\text{(B)}\ u_0(r) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\delta_0} C \sinh(\kappa r)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.6.8}$$

whereby we incorporate the boundary condition $u_0(r = 0) = 0$.

The two unknowns — the phase shift δ_0 and the amplitude factor C — are determined by the two equations that state the continuity of $u_0(r)$ and $\dfrac{\partial}{\partial r} u_0(r)$ at $r = a$:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(A)} \quad C \sin(\kappa a) &= \sin(ka + \delta_0)\,, \\ C\kappa \cos(\kappa a) &= k \cos(ka + \delta_0)\,, \\ \text{(B)} \quad C \sinh(\kappa a) &= \sin(ka + \delta_0)\,, \\ C\kappa \cosh(\kappa a) &= k \cos(ka + \delta_0)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{3.6.9}$$

We could extract rather explicit expression for δ_0 but do not need this much detail if we are mainly interested in the total cross section σ for which $\sin(\delta_0)^2$ is needed.

We note that

$$\begin{aligned} \sin(\delta_0) &= \sin(ka + \delta_0 - ka) \\ &= \cos(ka) \sin(ka + \delta_0) - \sin(ka) \cos(ka + \delta_0)\,, \end{aligned} \tag{3.6.10}$$

with the consequence

$$\sin(\delta_0) = \begin{cases} C\Big(\cos(ka) \sin(\kappa a) - \dfrac{\kappa}{k} \sin(ka) \cos(\kappa a)\Big) & \text{for (A)}\,, \\ C\Big(\cos(ka) \sinh(\kappa a) - \dfrac{\kappa}{k} \sin(ka) \cosh(\kappa a)\Big) & \text{for (B)}\,. \end{cases} \tag{3.6.11}$$

With

$$\frac{1}{C^2} = \left(\frac{1}{C}\sin(ka+\delta_0)\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{C}\cos(ka+\delta_0)\right)^2$$
$$= \begin{cases} \sin(\kappa a)^2 + \left(\frac{\kappa}{k}\cos(\kappa a)\right)^2 & \text{for (A)}\,, \\ \sinh(\kappa a)^2 + \left(\frac{\kappa}{k}\cosh(\kappa a)\right)^2 & \text{for (B)}\,, \end{cases} \tag{3.6.12}$$

this gives

$$\text{(A)} \quad \sin(\delta_0)^2 = \frac{\big(k\cos(ka)\sin(\kappa a) - \kappa\sin(ka)\cos(\kappa a)\big)^2}{\big(k\sin(\kappa a)\big)^2 + \big(\kappa\cos(\kappa a)\big)^2}\,,$$

$$\text{(B)} \quad \sin(\delta_0)^2 = \frac{\big(k\cos(ka)\sinh(\kappa a) - \kappa\sin(ka)\cosh(\kappa a)\big)^2}{\big(k\sinh(\kappa a)\big)^2 + \big(\kappa\cosh(\kappa a)\big)^2}\,, \tag{3.6.13}$$

and the resulting cross section $\sigma = \big(4\pi/k^2\big)\,\sin(\delta_0)^2$ is

$$\sigma = 4\pi a^2 \times \begin{cases} \dfrac{\Big(\cos(ka)\dfrac{\sin(\kappa a)}{\kappa a} - \dfrac{\sin(ka)}{ka}\cos(\kappa a)\Big)^2}{(k/\kappa)^2\sin(\kappa a)^2 + \cos(\kappa a)^2} & \text{for (A)}\,, \\ \dfrac{\Big(\cos(ka)\dfrac{\sinh(\kappa a)}{\kappa a} - \dfrac{\sin(ka)}{ka}\cosh(\kappa a)\Big)^2}{(k/\kappa)^2\sinh(\kappa a)^2 + \cosh(\kappa a)^2} & \text{for (B)}\,. \end{cases} \tag{3.6.14}$$

This cross section applies to low-energy scattering by the hard-sphere potential (3.6.3), whereby (3.6.7) identifies the two cases.

It is interesting to consider the long-wavelength limit of $k \to 0$. Then, we have (A) for an attractive potential, $V_0 < 0$, and (B) for a repulsive potential, $V_0 > 0$, and we get

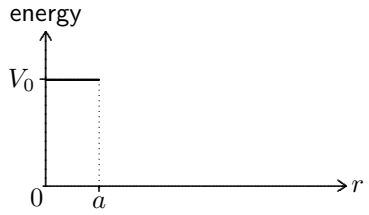
$$\sigma = 4\pi a^2 \times \begin{cases} \left(\dfrac{\tan(\kappa a)}{\kappa a} - 1\right)^2 & \text{for} \quad V_0 < 0\,, \\ \left(1 - \dfrac{\tanh(\kappa a)}{\kappa a}\right)^2 & \text{for} \quad V_0 > 0\,, \end{cases} \tag{3.6.15}$$

and both give $\sigma = 0$ for $V_0 \to 0$. The argument of the tangent, or hyperbolic tangent, is

$$\kappa a = \sqrt{2M|V_0|a^2/\hbar^2} \tag{3.6.16}$$

in both cases.

For $V_0 > 0$,

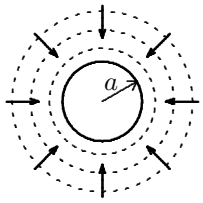


(3.6.17)

the limit $V_0 \to \infty$ is that of an impenetrable sphere, for which $u_0(r) = 0$ when $r < a$. This limit has

$$\frac{\tanh(\kappa a)}{\kappa a} \to 0\,, \quad \sigma \to 4\pi a^2\,, \tag{3.6.18}$$

so that the cross section is four times the geometrical cross section πa^2 of the sphere with radius a. As one student remarked during lecture, σ happens to be the surface of the sphere, and this might be interpreted as the s-wave probing the sphere from all sides:



(3.6.19)

Indeed, this is a rather natural picture for the sphere-shaped wave fronts of an s-wave.

The situation is quite different for the attractive case $V_0 < 0$, where $|V_0| \to \infty$ means an ever stronger attractive potential with ever more bound states. Since $\tan(\kappa a) = \pm\infty$ when $\kappa a \to \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}, \ldots$, the cross section is very large for values of V_0 close to

$$V_0 = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{\pi/2}{a}\right)^2, -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{3\pi/2}{a}\right)^2, -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left(\frac{5\pi/2}{a}\right)^2, \ldots\,. \tag{3.6.20}$$

These are the V_0 values for which the total number of bound states changes

by one:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{no bound state for} && V_0 > -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\Big(\frac{\pi}{2a}\Big)^2, \\
&\text{one bound state for} && -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\Big(\frac{\pi}{2a}\Big)^2 > V_0 > -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\Big(\frac{3\pi}{2a}\Big)^2, \\
&\text{two bound states for} && -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\Big(\frac{3\pi}{2a}\Big)^2 > V_0 > -\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\Big(\frac{5\pi}{2a}\Big)^2,
\end{aligned} \tag{3.6.21}$$

and so forth.

At one of those threshold values, there is a bound state, the new one, at energy $E = 0$, that is at the edge of the continuum of scattering states. This energetic degeneracy, or near degeneracy when V_0 is just a bit more negative, means that the s-waves with $k \gtrsim 0$ are nearly resonant with a bound state. Such a resonance can lead to a dramatic increase in the scattering cross section, as is illustrated by the example considered here.

Chapter 4

Angular Momentum

4.1 Spin

In *Basic Matters*, much of the general formalism of quantum mechanics is developed under the guidance of the example of magnetic silver atoms that pass through magnetic fields, are probed by inhomogeneous Stern*–Gerlach† magnets, and so forth. Pauli's‡ vector operator $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ is central to the description of a silver atom (in its magnetic properties), and we recall from (2.9.13) of *Basic Matters* that

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma},\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma}] = 2\mathrm{i}(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma} \tag{4.1.1}$$

is the commutation relation for two arbitrary components of $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$. The vector $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ specifies the orientation of the magnetic moment carried by the atom so that rotating the magnetic moment is tantamount to rotating the Pauli vector $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$. Such a rotation is described by an equation of motion of the form

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\boldsymbol{\sigma} = \boldsymbol{\omega}\times\boldsymbol{\sigma} = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[\boldsymbol{\sigma},H]\,, \tag{4.1.2}$$

where the relevant term in the Hamilton operator H is

$$H_{\mathrm{rot}} = \frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\omega}\cdot\boldsymbol{\sigma} = \boldsymbol{\omega}\cdot\boldsymbol{S} \quad \text{with} \quad \boldsymbol{S} = \frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}\,. \tag{4.1.3}$$

This $\boldsymbol{S}$ is thus the hermitian generator for internal rotations of the silver atom. It obeys the commutation relation

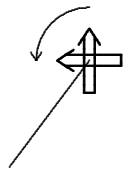
$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{S},\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{S}] = \mathrm{i}\hbar(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{S} \tag{4.1.4}$$

*Otto Stern (1888–1969) †Walther Gerlach (1889–1979)
‡Wolfgang Pauli (1900–1958)

that we have seen in *Simple Systems* for the orbital angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R} \times \boldsymbol{P}$,

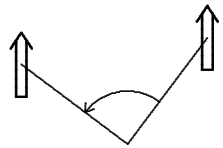
$$[\boldsymbol{a} \cdot \boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{b} \cdot \boldsymbol{L}] = \mathrm{i}\hbar(\boldsymbol{a} \times \boldsymbol{b}) \cdot \boldsymbol{L}\,. \tag{4.1.5}$$

As we know from the discussion of $\boldsymbol{L}$, it is the hermitian generator for orbital rotation. For the silver atom, then, we need to distinguish between the *internal rotation*:



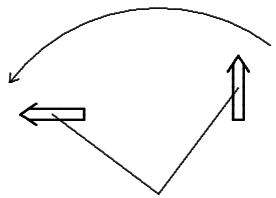
(4.1.6)

for a counter-clockwise rotation around an axis perpendicular to the paper and *orbital rotation*:



(4.1.7)

during which the magnetic moment keeps pointing in the same direction. When both rotations happen at the same rate, we have the picture of a *rigid rotation*:



(4.1.8)

The respective terms in the Hamilton operator are

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \boldsymbol{S} &\quad \text{for the internal rotation only,} \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot \boldsymbol{L} &\quad \text{for the orbital rotation only,} \\ \boldsymbol{\omega} \cdot (\boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{S}) &\quad \text{for both jointly}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.9}$$

There is nothing so particular about the silver atom considered. We can, therefore, safely infer that this is just one example of the general situation

that atomic objects have orbital angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$, internal angular momentum $\boldsymbol{S}$, commonly referred to as *spin*, and total angular momentum

$$\boldsymbol{J} = \boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{S}\,. \tag{4.1.10}$$

For $\boldsymbol{J}$, the same commutation relations apply,

$$[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{J}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{J}] = \mathrm{i}\hbar(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{J}\,, \tag{4.1.11}$$

and it follows that $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z (or J_x, or J_y) have common eigenstates. Following the pattern that is used in (4.2.3) of *Simple Systems* for orbital angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}$, we write $|j,m\rangle$ for the common eigenket and state the eigenvalues by

$$\begin{aligned} J_z\big|j,m\big\rangle &= \big|j,m\big\rangle\hbar m\,,\\ \boldsymbol{J}^2\big|j,m\big\rangle &= \big|j,m\big\rangle\hbar^2 j(j+1)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.12}$$

If there is orbital angular momentum only, that is, $\boldsymbol{J} = \boldsymbol{L}$, we know that $j = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ and $m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \ldots, \pm j$ are the possible eigenvalues. By contrast, for the spin angular momentum of a silver atom, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{J} &= \frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}\,,\\ \boldsymbol{J}^2 &= \left(\frac{\hbar}{2}\right)^2\left(\sigma_x^2+\sigma_y^2+\sigma_z^2\right) = \frac{3}{4}\hbar^2\\ &= \hbar^2\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{2}+1\right), \end{aligned} \tag{4.1.13}$$

so that $j = \frac{1}{2}$ here, and the eigenvalues of $J_z = \dfrac{\hbar}{2}\sigma_z$ are $\pm\dfrac{\hbar}{2}$, that is, $m = \pm\frac{1}{2}$. So, here we have half-integer values for j and m, whereas orbital angular momentum can have integer values only. Clearly, then, one cannot understand the spin of a silver atom as coming about by the orbital motion of some constituents around a center inside the atom; contrary to what the terminology suggests, nothing is spinning. Angular momentum of the spin type is of a quite different nature than orbital angular momentum. Spin is truly intrinsic to the atomic object.

We must, therefore, find out what are the eigenvalues for $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z in general. For this purpose, we employ the same methodology as for orbital angular momentum in Section 4.1 of *Simple Systems*. In the first step, we introduce

$$J_\pm = J_x \pm \mathrm{i}J_y \tag{4.1.14}$$

and note that

$$\begin{aligned}[J_z, J_\pm] &= [J_z, J_x] \pm \mathrm{i}[J_z, J_y] \\ &= \mathrm{i}\hbar J_y \pm \mathrm{i}(-\mathrm{i}\hbar J_x) = \pm\hbar(J_x \pm \mathrm{i}J_y)\end{aligned} \tag{4.1.15}$$

or

$$J_z J_\pm = J_\pm(J_z \pm \hbar)\,. \tag{4.1.16}$$

Accordingly, the two operators $J_\pm$ act as ladder operators for the quantum number m,

$$\begin{aligned}J_z J_\pm \big|j,m\big\rangle &= J_\pm(J_z \pm \hbar)\big|j,m\big\rangle \\ &= J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle\hbar(m \pm 1)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{4.1.17}$$

telling us that $J_\pm|j,m\rangle$ is an eigenket of J_z with eigenvalue $\hbar(m\pm1)$. Since J_+ and J_- commute with $\boldsymbol{J}^2$,

$$\big[\boldsymbol{J}^2, J_\pm\big] = 0\,, \tag{4.1.18}$$

we also have

$$\boldsymbol{J}^2 J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle = J_\pm\boldsymbol{J}^2\big|j,m\big\rangle = J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle\hbar^2 j(j+1) \tag{4.1.19}$$

so that $J_\pm|j,m\rangle$ is an eigenket of $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ with eigenvalue $\hbar^2 j(j+1)$. Taken together, these statements imply

$$\begin{aligned}J_+\big|j,m\big\rangle &\propto \big|j,m+1\big\rangle\,, \\ J_-\big|j,m\big\rangle &\propto \big|j,m-1\big\rangle\,,\end{aligned} \tag{4.1.20}$$

where the factor of proportionality is to be found. We get it, of course, from the normalization of all kets $|j,m\rangle$ to unit length. So, what is the length of $J_\pm|j,m\rangle$? Let us see,

$$\big\langle j,m\big|J_\pm^\dagger J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle = \big\langle j,m\big|J_\mp J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle \tag{4.1.21}$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}J_\mp J_\pm &= (J_x \mp \mathrm{i}J_y)(J_x \pm \mathrm{i}J_y) \\ &= J_x^2 + J_y^2 \pm \mathrm{i}(J_x J_y - J_y J_x) \\ &= J_x^2 + J_y^2 \pm \mathrm{i}(\mathrm{i}\hbar J_z) \\ &= \boldsymbol{J}^2 - J_z^2 \mp \hbar J_z\,,\end{aligned} \tag{4.1.22}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle j,m\big|J_\pm^\dagger J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle &= \hbar^2\Big(j(j+1)-m^2\mp m\Big)\\ &= \hbar^2(j\mp m)(j\pm m+1)\,,\end{aligned}\tag{4.1.23}$$

where the right-hand side cannot be negative. It follows that there is a last rung on the m ladder both for climbing up by applying J_+ and for climbing down by applying J_-. In the up-climb, we stop at $m=j$, in the down-climb, at $m=-j$, and since the steps are by changing m to $m+1$ or $m-1$, respectively, the difference $2j$ between $m=+j$ and $m=-j$ must be an integer. As a consequence, we have these possible eigenvalues for $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z:

$$\begin{aligned}&\boldsymbol{J}^2 \text{ has eigenvalues } \hbar^2 j(j+1) \text{ with } j=0,\tfrac{1}{2},1,\tfrac{3}{2},2,\dots\,,\\ &J_z \text{ has eigenvalues } \hbar m \text{ with } m=j,j-1,j-2,\dots,-j+1,-j\,.\end{aligned}\tag{4.1.24}$$

These are $2j+1$ different m values for the given j value. With the usual convention that the normalization factors in (4.1.20) are positive, we further establish that

$$J_\pm\big|j,m\big\rangle = \big|j,m\pm1\big\rangle\hbar\sqrt{(j\mp m)(j\pm m+1)}\,.\tag{4.1.25}$$

4.2 Addition of two angular momenta

4.2.1 *General case*

In (4.1.10), we add two angular momentum vector operators to get a third one. This raises the question of adding any two, as in

$$\boldsymbol{J}=\boldsymbol{J}_1+\boldsymbol{J}_2\,.\tag{4.2.1}$$

For $\boldsymbol{J}_1$, we have the common eigenstates of $\boldsymbol{J}_1^2$ and J_{1z} with eigenvalues $\hbar^2 j_1(j_1+1)$ and $\hbar m_1$, respectively, and likewise for $\boldsymbol{J}_2$ with j_2 and m_2. There are altogether $(2j_1+1)(2j_2+1)$ kets of the type

$$\big|(j_1,m_1)(j_2,m_2)\big\rangle = \big|j_1,m_1\big\rangle\otimes\big|j_2,m_2\big\rangle\,,\tag{4.2.2}$$

the common eigenkets of $\boldsymbol{J}_1^2$ and J_{1z} as well as $\boldsymbol{J}_2^2$ and J_{2z}. They are tensor products of the kets for the constituents $\boldsymbol{J}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{J}_2$; see Section 2.18 in *Basic Matters*.

Since

$$J_z=J_{1z}+J_{2z}\,,\tag{4.2.3}$$

they are also eigenkets of J_z with eigenvalue $\hbar(m_1+m_2)$,

$$J_z\big|(j_1,m_1)(j_2,m_2)\big\rangle = \big|(j_1,m_1)(j_2,m_2)\big\rangle\hbar(m_1+m_2) \tag{4.2.4}$$

so that the possible values of $m=m_1+m_2$ range from $m=-(j_1+j_2)$ to $m=j_1+j_2$. The largest value $m=j_1+j_2$ is only realized for $m_1=j_1$ and $m_2=j_2$, but there are two possibilities for $m=j_1+j_2-1$, namely $(m_1,m_2)=(j_1,j_2-1)$ and (j_1-1,j_2); there are three possibilities for $m=j_1+j_2-2$, and so forth. The following table summarizes these matters:

m	(m_1,m_2) pairs	dimension of the subspace
j_1+j_2	(j_1,j_2)	1
j_1+j_2-1	(j_1,j_2-1), (j_1-1,j_2)	2
j_1+j_2-2	(j_1,j_2-2), (j_1-1,j_2-1), (j_1-2,j_2)	3
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$
$-j_1-j_2+1$	$(-j_1+1,-j_2)$, $(-j_1,-j_2+1)$	2
$-j_1-j_2$	$(-j_1,-j_2)$	1

(4.2.5)

The largest possible value for j — eigenvalue $\hbar^2 j(j+1)$ of $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ — is, therefore, $j=j_1+j_2$. We write

$$\big|j_1,j_2;j,m\big\rangle \tag{4.2.6}$$

for the common eigenkets of $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z, indicating that these $|j,m\rangle$ kets come about by adding $\boldsymbol{J}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{J}_2$ with j_1 and j_2 as the quantum numbers for $\boldsymbol{J}_1^2$ and $\boldsymbol{J}_2^2$. Clearly,

$$\big|j_1,j_2;j_1+j_2,j_1+j_2\big\rangle = \big|(j_1,j_1)(j_2,j_2)\big\rangle \tag{4.2.7}$$

for the state with $j=j_1+j_2$ and $m=j$. The other states to $j=j_1+j_2$ are then obtained by successive applications of

$$J_- = J_{1-}+J_{2-} = \big(J_{1x}+J_{2x}\big) - \mathrm{i}\big(J_{1y}+J_{2y}\big)\,, \tag{4.2.8}$$

giving

$$\big|j_1,j_2;j=j_1+j_2,m\big\rangle \propto (J_-)^{j_1+j_2-m}\big|j_1,j_2;j=j_1+j_2,m=j\big\rangle\,, \tag{4.2.9}$$

where the proportionality factor is the respective product of the square-root factors in (4.1.25) (or rather their reciprocals).

For each m value, this gives a particular linear combination of the kets $|(j_1, m_1)(j_2, m_2)\rangle$ with $m_1 + m_2 = m$. For example, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&\big|j_1, j_2; j = j_1 + j_2, m = j - 1\big\rangle \\
&= \frac{(J_{1-} + J_{2-})\big|(j_1, m_1 = j_1)(j_2, m_2 = j_2)\big\rangle}{\sqrt{2j}\,\hbar} \\
&= \big|(j_1, m_1 = j_1 - 1)(j_2, m_2 = j_2)\big\rangle \frac{\sqrt{2j_1}}{\sqrt{2j}} \\
&\quad + \big|(j_1, m_1 = j_1)(j_2, m_2 = j_2 - 1)\big\rangle \frac{\sqrt{2j_2}}{\sqrt{2j}}\,. \qquad (4.2.10)
\end{aligned}$$

The orthogonal linear combination of the m_1, m_2 kets, with coefficients $\sqrt{j_2/j}$ and $-\sqrt{j_1/j}$, is what is left over in the two-dimensional subspace to $m = j_1 + j_2 - 1$. So, this second state must be the joint eigenstate of $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z with eigenvalues corresponding to the quantum numbers $j = j_1 + j_2 - 1$ and $m = j$,

$$\begin{aligned}
&\big|j_1, j_2; j = m = j_1 + j_2 - 1\big\rangle \qquad (4.2.11) \\
&= \big|(j_1, m_1 = j_1)(j_2, m_2 = j_2 - 1)\big\rangle \sqrt{\frac{j_1}{j_1 + j_2}} \\
&\quad - \big|(j_1, m_1 = j_1 - 1)(j_2, m_2 = j_2)\big\rangle \sqrt{\frac{j_2}{j_1 + j_2}}\,, \qquad (4.2.12)
\end{aligned}$$

and we apply $J_- = J_{1-} + J_{2-}$ repeatedly to get the kets for all other m values. Thereafter, we have all kets $|j, m\rangle$ for $j = j_1 + j_2$ and $j = j_1 + j_2 - 1$ and all corresponding m values. At this stage, all kets with $m = \pm(j_1 + j_2)$ and $m = \pm(j_1 + j_2 - 1)$ have been used up, and there is one linear combination left for $m_1 + m_2 = j_1 + j_2 - 2$ and one for $m_1 + m_2 = -(j_1 + j_2 - 2)$. These must then be the states for $j = j_1 + j_2 - 2$ and $m = \pm j$, and beginning with the $m = +j$ state, say, we get all others by applying J_- repeatedly. And so forth, we get successively the kets $|j, m\rangle$ for $j = j_1 + j_2$, then $j = j_1 + j_2 - 1$, then $j = j_1 + j_2 - 2, \ldots$ until all states are used up, which happens when we reach $j = |j_1 - j_2|$, the smallest possible j value.

That this is indeed the smallest value is easily seen by a count of all states,

$$\sum_{j=|j_1-j_2|}^{j_1+j_2} (2j + 1) = (2j_1 + 1)(2j_2 + 1)\,, \qquad (4.2.13)$$

which, as we know, is the total number of states available. For the evaluation of this sum, it helps to note that it is of the telescoping kind because $2j+1 = (j+1)^2 - j^2$.

In summary, the possible values for j are

$$j = j_1 + j_2\,,\ j_1 + j_2 - 1\,,\ j_1 + j_2 - 2\,,\ \ldots\,,\ \big|j_1 - j_2\big|\,, \tag{4.2.14}$$

and for each j value, there are, of course, $2j+1$ values for m, namely $m = j, j-1, \ldots, -j$. The construction discussed above, where we begin with $j = m = j_1 + j_2$, apply J_- repeatedly and then repeat the whole procedure starting with $j = m = j_1 + j_2 - 1$, until all possibilities are exhausted, tells us the coefficients in

$$\big|j_1, j_2; j, m\big\rangle = \sum_{m_1, m_2} \big|(j_1, m_1)(j_2, m_2)\big\rangle \underbrace{\big\langle (j_1, m_1)(j_2, m_2)\big|j_1, j_2; j, m\big\rangle}_{\text{C-G coefficient}}\,. \tag{4.2.15}$$

These so-called *Clebsch**–*Gordan*† *coefficients* can thus be calculated in a rather simple, systematic, but somewhat tedious way. They have been tabulated and are thus readily available, and their properties have been studied diligently. We note that

$$\begin{aligned} &\big\langle (j_1, m_1)(j_2, m_2)\big|j_1, j_2; j, m\big\rangle = 0 \\ &\text{unless } m = m_1 + m_2 \quad \text{and} \quad j_1 + j_2 \geq j \geq \big|j_1 - j_2\big|\,, \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.16}$$

a basic property of the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients that follows immediately from the arguments given above. Further, most people (but not all) use the convention that the coefficient is positive for $m = j$ and $m_1 = j_1$, which is the choice we made in (4.2.11) and also in (4.2.7). With this convention, the values of the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients are unique.

4.2.2 *Two spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ systems*

Perhaps the simplest situation is the important case of adding two $j = \frac{1}{2}$ angular momenta. As in Section 2.18 in *Basic Matters*, we denote the $m = \pm\frac{1}{2}$ states by $|\uparrow\rangle$ and $|\downarrow\rangle$ for an individual $j = \frac{1}{2}$ system and have

$$\begin{aligned} m = m_1 + m_2 = 1: &\quad \big|\uparrow\uparrow\big\rangle \text{ only, for which } m_1 = m_2 = \tfrac{1}{2}\,, \\ m = 0: &\quad \big|\uparrow\downarrow\big\rangle \text{ and } \big|\downarrow\uparrow\big\rangle\,, \text{ for which} \\ &\quad (m_1, m_2) = \big(\tfrac{1}{2}, -\tfrac{1}{2}\big) \text{ and } \big(-\tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{1}{2}\big)\,, \\ m = -1: &\quad \big|\downarrow\downarrow\big\rangle \text{ only, for which } m_1 = m_2 = -\tfrac{1}{2}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.17}$$

*Rudolf Friedrich Alfred CLEBSCH (1833-1872) †Paul Albert GORDAN (1837–1912)

The procedure of Section 4.2.1 then gives the three *triplet* states

$$\begin{aligned} \big|j=1,m=1\big\rangle &= \big|\uparrow\uparrow\big\rangle\,, \\ \big|j=1,m=0\big\rangle &= \Big(\big|\uparrow\downarrow\big\rangle + \big|\downarrow\uparrow\big\rangle\Big)/\sqrt{2}\,, \\ \big|j=1,m=-1\big\rangle &= \big|\downarrow\downarrow\big\rangle \end{aligned} \tag{4.2.18}$$

for $j=1$, as well as the *singlet* state

$$\big|j=0,m=0\big\rangle = \Big(\big|\uparrow\downarrow\big\rangle - \big|\downarrow\uparrow\big\rangle\Big)/\sqrt{2} \tag{4.2.19}$$

for $j=0$. The amplitude factors of $+1$ or $\pm 1/\sqrt{2}$ on the right-hand sides of (4.2.18) and (4.2.19) are the nonvanishing Clebsch–Gordan coefficients for $j_1=j_2=\frac{1}{2}$ and $j=1$ as well as $j=0$.

The triplet states are symmetric under the exchange of the two individual spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particles, whereas the singlet state is antisymmetric. In passing, we also note that the singlet state appears in (2.18.18) of *Basic Matters*.

4.2.3 *Total angular momentum of an electron*

Another situation that is quite important is that of a single electron in a spherically symmetric potential, such as the electron in a hydrogen-like atom, or the valence electron in an alkaline atom. Such an electron has orbital angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L}=\boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}$ and spin-$\frac{1}{2}$, $\boldsymbol{S}=\frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}$, so that $\boldsymbol{J}=\boldsymbol{L}+\boldsymbol{S}$ takes on values corresponding to the addition of two angular momenta with $j_1=l$ and $j_2=\frac{1}{2}$. Therefore, we have the following cases

quantum numbers l	j	spectroscopic denotation	multiplicity
0	1/2	$s_{1/2}$	2 (doublet)
1	1/2	$p_{1/2}$	2 (doublet)
	3/2	$p_{3/2}$	4 (quartet)
2	3/2	$d_{3/2}$	4 (quartet)
	5/2	$d_{5/2}$	6 (sextet)
3	5/2	$f_{5/2}$	6 (sextet)
	7/2	$f_{7/2}$	8 (octet)

(4.2.20)

and so forth. The letters s,p,d,f stand for $l=0,1,2,3$ and the subscripts denote the value of j. In spectroscopy, one would label spectroscopic lines by identifying them as "the $d_{5/2}$ to $p_{3/2}$ transition," for example.

In hydrogen, or hydrogen-like atoms, a further label is the principal quantum number n that identifies the Bohr shell, with $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, as discussed in Section 5.1 of *Simple Systems*. The possible values of l are then $l = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1$ in the nth Bohr shell. In the first Bohr shell, $n = 1$, there is only the $s_{1/2}$ doublet: $1s_{1/2}$; in the second Bohr shell, we have $2s_{1/2}, 2p_{1/2}$, and $2p_{3/2}$; in the third Bohr shell, there are $3s_{1/2}, 3p_{1/2}, 3p_{3/2}, 3d_{3/2}$, and $3d_{5/2}$; and so forth. An even finer classification would take into account that the nucleus may also have spin and so contribute to the total angular momentum of the atom.

Chapter 5

External Magnetic Field

5.1 Electric charge in a magnetic field

A charge q moving in a magnetic field $\boldsymbol{B}(\boldsymbol{r})$ experiences a velocity-dependent *Lorentz force*,

$$M\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}t^2}\boldsymbol{r}(t) = \frac{q}{c}\frac{\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}}{\mathrm{d}t} \times \boldsymbol{B}(\boldsymbol{r})\,, \tag{5.1.1}$$

where c is the speed of light. A Hamilton operator for this physical situation cannot be of the typical structure

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 + V(\boldsymbol{R}) \tag{5.1.2}$$

because this does not give rise to velocity-dependent forces. Rather, we need a structurally different Hamilton operator, actually of the form

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\Big(\boldsymbol{P} - \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{R})\Big)^2\,, \tag{5.1.3}$$

where $\boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{r})$ is a vector potential for the magnetic field,

$$\boldsymbol{B}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \boldsymbol{\nabla} \times \boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{r})\,. \tag{5.1.4}$$

For simplicity, we consider only the case of a time-independent vector potential and thus time-independent magnetic field but, except for slight additional complications in the following formulas, matters remain largely the same even if a parametric time dependence is present in $\boldsymbol{B}$ and $\boldsymbol{A}$.

For this Hamilton operator, we have the velocity operator

$$\boldsymbol{V} = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\boldsymbol{R} = \frac{\partial H}{\partial \boldsymbol{P}} = \frac{1}{M}\Big(\boldsymbol{P} - \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{R})\Big)\,. \tag{5.1.5}$$

The first thing to note is that now the momentum $\boldsymbol{P}$ is not identical with $M\,\boldsymbol{V}$, the so-called *kinetic momentum*. One sometimes refers to $\boldsymbol{P}$ as the *canonical momentum* when one wishes to emphasize the difference between $\boldsymbol{P}$ and $M\,\boldsymbol{V}$.

Secondly, we note that

$$H = \frac{M}{2}\,\boldsymbol{V}^2 \tag{5.1.6}$$

with this expression for the velocity. Since there is no parametric time dependence in $\boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{R})$, there is no parametric time dependence in H, and it follows that $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}H}{\mathrm{d}t} = 0$. Therefore, the change of the velocity $\boldsymbol{V}$ in time can only be a change in the direction not a change of the speed $\big|\,\boldsymbol{V}\,\big|$. As expected, we see here that a charge moves in a magnetic field with constant speed but changes direction in time.

Before we can really justify these conclusions, we must demonstrate that the correct equations of motion emerge from the Hamilton operator (5.1.3). We need to consider

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(M\,\boldsymbol{V}) = \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[M\,\boldsymbol{V}, H] = \frac{M^2}{2\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\,\boldsymbol{V},\,\boldsymbol{V}^2\big]\,, \tag{5.1.7}$$

which raises the issue of the commutation relations among components of the velocity operator $\boldsymbol{V}$.

With numerical vectors $\boldsymbol{a}$ and $\boldsymbol{b}$, we have, as an application of (1.2.98), or rather its three-dimensional version in (4.1.7) of *Simple Systems*,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{V}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{V}] &= \frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\frac{1}{M^2}\Big[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} - \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{A}, \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{P} - \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{A}\Big] \\
&= \frac{q}{M^2c}(\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}\,\boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{A} - \boldsymbol{b}\cdot\boldsymbol{\nabla}\,\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{A}) \\
&= \frac{q}{M^2c}(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot(\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{A}) \\
&= \frac{q}{M^2c}(\boldsymbol{a}\times\boldsymbol{b})\cdot\boldsymbol{B}\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{5.1.8}$$

stating that the commutator between two components of this velocity vector operator is proportional to the component of the magnetic field in the third direction. As a consequence of the commutator, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{\mathrm{i}\hbar}\big[\boldsymbol{a}\cdot\boldsymbol{V},\,\boldsymbol{V}^2\big] &= \frac{q}{M^2c}\Big(\boldsymbol{a}\cdot(\boldsymbol{b}\times\boldsymbol{B})\Big|_{\boldsymbol{b}\,=\,\boldsymbol{V}} - \boldsymbol{a}\cdot(\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{b})\Big|_{\boldsymbol{b}\,=\,\boldsymbol{V}}\Big) \\
&= \frac{q}{M^2c}\boldsymbol{a}(\,\boldsymbol{V}\times\boldsymbol{B} - \boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{V}\,)\,,
\end{aligned} \tag{5.1.9}$$

and we get

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(M\,\boldsymbol{V}) = \frac{q}{2c}(\,\boldsymbol{V}\times\boldsymbol{B} - \boldsymbol{B}\times\,\boldsymbol{V})\,, \tag{5.1.10}$$

which is the properly symmetrized quantum version of the Lorentz force in (5.1.1).

Having thus demonstrated that

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\Big(\boldsymbol{P} - \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{A}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big)^2 \quad \text{with} \quad \boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{A}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \boldsymbol{B}(\boldsymbol{r}) \tag{5.1.11}$$

is the correct Hamilton operator, let us now apply it to the situation of a homogeneous magnetic field in the z direction,

$$\boldsymbol{B} = B\boldsymbol{e}_z \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} 0\\ 0\\ B\end{pmatrix}. \tag{5.1.12}$$

Then, the three cartesian components of $\boldsymbol{V} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} V_1\\ V_2\\ V_3\end{pmatrix}$ obey the commutation relations

$$[V_1, V_2] = \mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{qB}{M^2c}\,, \quad [V_1, V_3] = 0\,, \quad [V_2, V_3] = 0\,, \tag{5.1.13}$$

and the Hamilton operator

$$H = \underbrace{\frac{M}{2}\big(V_1^2 + V_2^2\big)}_{=H_\perp} + \underbrace{\frac{M}{2}V_3^2}_{=H_\parallel} = H_\perp + H_\parallel \tag{5.1.14}$$

splits naturally into two dynamically independent parts: the force-free motion along the z direction, which is of no further interest here, and the accelerated but speed-conserving motion in the xy plane governed by $H_\perp$.

We recognize that the pair V_1, V_2 is much like a position–momentum pair, having a commutator that is a multiple of the identity. It will be expedient to introduce nonhermitian operators ($qB > 0$ assumed)

$$A = \sqrt{\frac{M^2c}{2\hbar qB}}(V_1 + \mathrm{i}V_2)\,, \quad A^\dagger = \sqrt{\frac{M^2c}{2\hbar qB}}(V_1 - \mathrm{i}V_2)\,, \tag{5.1.15}$$

which obey

$$\big[A, A^\dagger\big] = 1\,, \tag{5.1.16}$$

the commutation relation for the ladder operators of a harmonic oscillator. Then,

$$H_\perp = \frac{\hbar q B}{Mc}\left(A^\dagger A + \frac{1}{2}\right) = \hbar\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\left(A^\dagger A + \frac{1}{2}\right), \tag{5.1.17}$$

that is, $H_\perp$ is the Hamilton operator of a harmonic oscillator with the *cyclotron frequency* (remember that $qB > 0$ is assumed)

$$\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}} = \frac{qB}{Mc}\,. \tag{5.1.18}$$

Therefore, the eigenvalues of $H_\perp$ are

$$\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\,,\ \frac{3}{2}\hbar\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\,,\ \frac{5}{2}\hbar\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\,,\ \ldots\,, \tag{5.1.19}$$

but — contrary to the one-dimensional harmonic oscillator — these eigenvalues are highly degenerate. What is determined by stating the energy are the expectation values of $A, A^\dagger, A^\dagger A, \ldots$, all referring solely to the velocity of the charged particle, but not at all to its position.

To illuminate this matter, let us consider two particular choices for the vector potential $\boldsymbol{A}$, namely

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{(1) the symmetric choice } \boldsymbol{A} = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{2}BX_2 \\ \frac{1}{2}BX_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \\
&\text{(2) the asymmetric choice } \boldsymbol{A} = BX_1\,\boldsymbol{e}_y \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ BX_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}.
\end{aligned} \tag{5.1.20}$$

One verifies easily that

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{A} = B\,\boldsymbol{e}_z \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ B \end{pmatrix} \tag{5.1.21}$$

for both choices. Clearly, the two vector potentials in (5.1.20) are valid options, and so are many more.

For the symmetric choice in (5.1.20), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
H_\perp &= \frac{M}{2}\left(V_1^2 + V_2^2\right) \\
&= \frac{M}{2}\left(\frac{1}{M}P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}X_2\right)^2 + \frac{M}{2}\left(\frac{1}{M}P_2 - \frac{1}{2}\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}X_1\right)^2
\end{aligned} \tag{5.1.22}$$

or

$$H_\perp = \frac{1}{2M}\big(P_1^2 + P_2^2\big) + \frac{1}{2}M\left(\frac{\omega_{\rm cycl}}{2}\right)^2\big(X_1^2 + X_2^2\big) - \frac{\omega_{\rm cycl}}{2}\big(X_1P_2 - X_2P_1\big)\,, \tag{5.1.23}$$

which is the Hamilton operator of a two-dimensional harmonic oscillator with natural frequency $\frac{1}{2}\omega_{\rm cycl}$ and an extra term proportional to

$$L_z = X_1P_2 - X_2P_1\,. \tag{5.1.24}$$

Recalling the lessons of Section 3.5 in *Simple Systems*, we note that it is fitting to switch to the $A_\pm$ ladder operators,

$$\begin{aligned} A_\pm^\dagger &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2M\hbar\omega_{\rm cycl}}}\left(\frac{1}{2}M\omega_{\rm cycl}\big(X_1 \pm {\rm i}X_2\big) - {\rm i}\big(P_1 \pm {\rm i}P_2\big)\right), \\ A_\pm &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2M\hbar\omega_{\rm cycl}}}\left(\frac{1}{2}M\omega_{\rm cycl}\big(X_1 \mp {\rm i}X_2\big) + {\rm i}\big(P_1 \mp {\rm i}P_2\big)\right), \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.25}$$

for which

$$H_\perp = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega_{\rm cycl}\Big(A_+^\dagger A_+ + A_-^\dagger A_- + 1\Big) - \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega_{\rm cycl}\underbrace{\Big(A_+^\dagger A_+ - A_-^\dagger A_-\Big)}_{=L_z/\hbar} \tag{5.1.26}$$

so that

$$H_\perp = \hbar\omega_{\rm cycl}\left(A_-^\dagger A_- + \frac{1}{2}\right). \tag{5.1.27}$$

That is, although there are two harmonic oscillators (ladder operators $A_+^\dagger, A_+$ for one and the pair $A_-^\dagger, A_-$ for the other), only one of them is dynamically relevant; the "+" oscillator does not appear in the Hamilton operator. The energy eigenvalues of the kets $|n_+, n_-\rangle$,

$$H_\perp\big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle = \big|n_+, n_-\big\rangle\hbar\omega_{\rm cycl}\big(n_- + \tfrac{1}{2}\big)\,, \tag{5.1.28}$$

do not depend on the quantum number n_+ and are, therefore, infinitely degenerate.

What is the physical origin of this degeneracy? To answer this question, we return to the equation of motion (5.1.10) and write it for the relevant perpendicular part $\boldsymbol{V}_\perp \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} V_1 \\ V_2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ for the present case of a homogeneous

magnetic field in the third direction, $\boldsymbol{B} \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ B \end{pmatrix}$, namely

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\big(M\,\boldsymbol{V}_\perp\big) = \frac{q}{c}\,\boldsymbol{V}_\perp \times \boldsymbol{B}\,. \tag{5.1.29}$$

With

$$\boldsymbol{V}_\perp = \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\boldsymbol{R}_\perp\,, \quad \boldsymbol{R}_\perp \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} X_1 \\ X_2 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{5.1.30}$$

this reads

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\Big(M\,\boldsymbol{V}_\perp + \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{B} \times \boldsymbol{R}_\perp\Big) = 0\,. \tag{5.1.31}$$

Accordingly, what is differentiated here is a constant of motion, for which it will be expedient to write

$$M\,\boldsymbol{V}_\perp(t) + \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{B} \times \boldsymbol{R}_\perp(t) = \frac{q}{c}\boldsymbol{B} \times \boldsymbol{R}_0\,, \tag{5.1.32}$$

where $\boldsymbol{R}_0 \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \begin{pmatrix} X_0 \\ Y_0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$ is a time-independent vector operator in the xy plane. So, we have

$$\boldsymbol{V}_\perp(t) = -\frac{q}{Mc}\boldsymbol{B} \times \big(\boldsymbol{R}_\perp(t) - \boldsymbol{R}_0\big)\,, \tag{5.1.33}$$

which — as it should — describes the circular motion around position $\boldsymbol{R}_0$ with the angular velocity $qB/(Mc) = \omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}$.

We make explicit the two components in the perpendicular xy plane,

$$V_1 = \omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\big(X_2 - Y_0\big)\,, \quad V_2 = -\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\big(X_1 - X_0\big)\,, \tag{5.1.34}$$

and recall that

$$V_1 = \frac{1}{M}P_1 + \frac{1}{2}\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}X_2\,, \quad V_2 = \frac{1}{M}P_2 - \frac{1}{2}\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}X_1 \tag{5.1.35}$$

for the symmetric choice. Accordingly, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X_0 &= X_1 + \frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}V_2 = \frac{1}{2}X_1 + \frac{1}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}P_2\,, \\ Y_0 &= X_2 - \frac{1}{\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}V_1 = \frac{1}{2}X_2 - \frac{1}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}P_1 \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.36}$$

for the coordinates of the center in the xy plane around which the circular motion happens. But, in view of

$$\big[X_0, Y_0\big] = -\frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\,, \tag{5.1.37}$$

the two coordinates cannot be specified simultaneously, their spreads obey the Heisenberg-type uncertainty relation

$$\delta X_0\,\delta Y_0 \geq \frac{\hbar}{2M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\,. \tag{5.1.38}$$

Now, consider the square of $\boldsymbol{R}_0$, the squared distance of the center of the circular motion from the origin of the coordinate system,

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{R}_0^2 = X_0^2 + Y_0^2 &= \frac{1}{4}\big(X_1^2 + X_2^2\big) + \left(\frac{1}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\right)^2\big(P_1^2 + P_2^2\big) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\big(X_1P_2 - X_2P_1\big) \\ &= \frac{2}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}^2}\left(\frac{1}{2M}\big(P_1^2 + P_2^2\big) + \frac{M}{2}\Big(\frac{\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}{2}\Big)^2\big(X_1^2 + X_2^2\big)\right) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}L_z\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.39}$$

After introducing the $A_\pm$ ladder operators of (5.1.25), this reads

$$\begin{aligned} X_0^2 + Y_0^2 &= \frac{2}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}^2}\frac{\hbar\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}{2}\Big(A_+^\dagger A_+ + A_-^\dagger A_- + 1\Big) \\ &\quad + \frac{\hbar}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\Big(A_+^\dagger A_+ - A_-^\dagger A_-\Big) \\ &= \frac{2\hbar}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\left(A_+^\dagger A_+ + \frac{1}{2}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{5.1.40}$$

It follows that the ket $|n_+, n_-\rangle$ is not only an eigenket of $H_\perp$ with energy eigenvalue $\hbar\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}\big(n_- + \frac{1}{2}\big)$, see (5.1.28), but also an eigenket of $X_0^2 + Y_0^2$ with eigenvalue $\big(2\hbar/(M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}})\big)\big(n_+ + \frac{1}{2}\big)$. This is to say, the distance of the center of the circular motion from the coordinate origin in the xy plane is specified precisely to be

$$r_0 = \sqrt{\frac{2\hbar}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}\left(n_+ + \frac{1}{2}\right)}\,, \tag{5.1.41}$$

but we do not know where the center is located on this circle of radius r_0.

This center can be anywhere. With the symmetric choice for the vector potential, option (1) in (5.1.20), we specify $X_0^2 + Y_0^2$, but the individual values of X_0 and Y_0 are subject to the uncertainty relation in (5.1.38).

5.2 Electron in a homogeneous magnetic field

In addition to carrying one negative unit of charge, $q = -e$ with $e > 0$, an electron has a magnetic dipole moment $\boldsymbol{\mu}$. Since this is a vector, it must be proportional to the only other intrinsic vector available for the electron, the spin vector $\boldsymbol{S} = \frac{\hbar}{2}\boldsymbol{\sigma}$. So, we write

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = -g\mu_{\mathrm{B}}\boldsymbol{S}/\hbar = -\frac{1}{2}g\mu_{\mathrm{B}}\boldsymbol{\sigma}\,, \tag{5.2.1}$$

where the minus sign is appropriate for the negatively charged electron and μ_{B} is the Bohr magneton,

$$\mu_{\mathrm{B}} = \frac{e\hbar}{2Mc} = 5.788 \times 10^{-9}\,\mathrm{eV/G} \tag{5.2.2}$$

($M = 9.1094 \times 10^{-28}\,\mathrm{g}$ is the electron mass and $e = 4.803 \times 10^{-10}\,\mathrm{Fr}$ is the elementary charge). The proportionality factor g is the *gyromagnetic ratio*, or "g-factor," which is very close to 2 for the electron. Indeed, we shall take $g = 2$ for the purpose of the present discussion and ignore that the correct value is about 0.1% larger. This so-called anomaly of the electron g-factor originates in subtle relativistic effects which are well beyond the scope of these lectures.

There is then an additional magnetic interaction energy to be taken into account,

$$H_{\mathrm{magn}} = -\boldsymbol{\mu}\cdot\boldsymbol{B} = g\mu_{\mathrm{B}}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{B}/\hbar\,, \tag{5.2.3}$$

which supplements the Hamilton operator in (5.1.3) to give the complete Hamilton operator ($q \to -e$ now)

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\Big(\boldsymbol{P} + \frac{e}{c}\boldsymbol{A}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)\Big)^2 + g\mu_{\mathrm{B}}\boldsymbol{S}\cdot\boldsymbol{B}/\hbar\,. \tag{5.2.4}$$

We restrict the discussion to the situation of a homogeneous magnetic field and choose the vector potential in the symmetric form (1) of (5.1.20),

$$\boldsymbol{A} = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R}\,. \tag{5.2.5}$$

The kinetic energy is then

$$\begin{aligned} H_{\text{kin}} &= \frac{M}{2}\boldsymbol{V}^2 = \frac{1}{2M}\Big(\boldsymbol{P} + \frac{e}{2c}\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R}\Big)^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 + \frac{e}{4Mc}\Big(\boldsymbol{P}\cdot(\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R}) + (\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R})\cdot\boldsymbol{P}\Big) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2M}\Big(\frac{e}{2c}\Big)^2(\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R})^2\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.6}$$

The terms linear in the magnetic field $\boldsymbol{B}$ can be rewritten to exhibit the orbital angular momentum $\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P}$,

$$\boldsymbol{P}\cdot(\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R}) + (\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R})\cdot\boldsymbol{P} = (-\boldsymbol{P}\times\boldsymbol{R} + \boldsymbol{R}\times\boldsymbol{P})\cdot\boldsymbol{B} = 2\boldsymbol{L}\cdot\boldsymbol{B}\,, \tag{5.2.7}$$

so that, with the inclusion of H_{magn} of (5.2.3),

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 + \frac{\mu_{\text{B}}}{\hbar}(\boldsymbol{L} + g\boldsymbol{S})\cdot\boldsymbol{B} + \frac{e^2}{8Mc^2}(\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{R})^2\,. \tag{5.2.8}$$

Note the appearance of the sum $\boldsymbol{L} + g\boldsymbol{S}$, which tells us that the magnetic moment associated with the orbital motion of the electron, that is: the magnetic moment that stems from the electric current of the moving electron, has the size of one Bohr magneton μ_{B} per $\hbar$, the unit of angular momentum. By contrast, the magnetic moment of the spin angular momentum is amplified by $g \cong 2$; it is essentially twice as large. Put differently, the spin of $\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ gives rise to a magnetic interaction as strong as that for orbital angular momentum of $\hbar$.

Aiming at a perturbative first-order treatment of the energy shifts introduced by the magnetic field, we neglect the term proportional to $\boldsymbol{B}^2$ (in atoms, it gives rise to diamagnetism) and get the first-order effect by applying the Hellmann*–Feynman† theorem of Section 6.1 in *Simple Systems* or any equivalent statement of perturbation theory. In short, we have

$$\delta E_{\text{magn}} = \frac{\mu_{\text{B}}}{\hbar}\big\langle(\boldsymbol{L} + g\boldsymbol{S})\cdot\boldsymbol{B}\big\rangle \tag{5.2.9}$$

with the expectation value evaluated for the unperturbed states.

As derived, this applies to a single electron in a homogeneous magnetic field. But just as well there could have been an additional potential energy, such as the Coulombic interaction with an atomic nucleus, and there could be more than one electron. Then, $\boldsymbol{L}$ and $\boldsymbol{S}$ stand for the total orbital and spin angular momenta, the sums of the contributions from the individual

*Hans Hellmann (1903–1938) †Richard Phillips Feynman (1918–1988)

electrons,

$$\boldsymbol{L} = \sum_j \boldsymbol{L}_j\,, \quad \boldsymbol{S} = \sum_j \boldsymbol{S}_j \tag{5.2.10}$$

with $\boldsymbol{L}_j, \boldsymbol{S}_j$ referring to the jth electron.

We take for granted that if there is another potential energy, it is spherically symmetric, as is the case for the Coulomb potential in an atom. Then, the unperturbed states can either be chosen as the

$$\text{joint eigenstates } \big|(l,m_l)(s,m_s)\big\rangle \text{ of } \boldsymbol{L}^2,\, L_z,\, \boldsymbol{S}^2, \text{ and } S_z \tag{5.2.11}$$

(for $\boldsymbol{B} = B\boldsymbol{e}_z$, that is $\boldsymbol{B}$ is aligned with the z axis) or we can choose the

$$\text{joint eigenstates } \big|l,s;j,m_j\big\rangle \text{ of } \boldsymbol{L}^2,\, \boldsymbol{S}^2,\, \boldsymbol{J}^2, \text{ and } J_z\,, \tag{5.2.12}$$

where $\boldsymbol{J} = \boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{S}$ is the total angular momentum.

For the L_z, S_z set of (5.2.11), we have

$$\delta E_{\text{magn}} = (m_l + g m_s)\mu_{\text{B}} B\,, \tag{5.2.13}$$

where $m_l = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \ldots$ is always integer, whereas m_s is integer for an even number of electrons and half-integer for an odd number of electrons. But for $g = 2$, the product gm_s is always integer as well. Therefore, these magnetic energy shifts are degenerate. For example, if there are three electrons, so that $m_s = \pm\frac{1}{2}, \pm\frac{3}{2}$ are the possible values for m_s, we get the same value for δE_{magn} for the quantum numbers

$$(m_l, m_s) = \big(0, \tfrac{1}{2}\big), \big(2, -\tfrac{1}{2}\big), \big(-2, \tfrac{3}{2}\big), \big(4, -\tfrac{3}{2}\big)\,, \tag{5.2.14}$$

that is, $\delta E_{\text{magn}} = \mu_{\text{B}} B$ is fourfold degenerate here.

Matters are remarkably more involved when we choose the $\boldsymbol{J}^2, J_z$ states of (5.2.12) as the unperturbed set. We need a special case of the Wigner–Eckart* theorem to handle this. So, as a preparation, consider the three operators $Z_0, Z_\pm$ defined by

$$Z_0 = S_z\,, \quad Z_{\pm1} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\big(\mp S_x - \mathrm{i}S_y\big)\,. \tag{5.2.15}$$

One verifies easily that

$$\big[J_\pm, Z_\alpha\big] = \hbar\sqrt{(1 \mp \alpha)(2 \pm \alpha)}\, Z_{\alpha\pm1}\,, \tag{5.2.16}$$

*Carl Henry ECKART (1902–1973)

where $J_\pm = J_x \pm \mathrm{i}J_y$ are the familiar angular momentum ladder operators, which have an orbital and a spin part,

$$J_\pm = \big(L_x \pm \mathrm{i}L_y\big) + \big(S_x \pm \mathrm{i}S_y\big)\,. \tag{5.2.17}$$

We use this to evaluate

$$\big\langle jm\big|\big[[J_\pm, Z_\alpha]\big|jm'\big\rangle = \begin{cases} \big\langle jm\big|\big(J_\pm Z_\alpha - Z_\alpha J_\pm\big)\big|jm'\big\rangle\,, \\ \hbar\sqrt{(1\mp\alpha)(2\pm\alpha)}\big\langle jm\big|Z_{\alpha\pm1}\big|jm'\big\rangle \end{cases} \tag{5.2.18}$$

by the two alternatives indicated, where $|jm\rangle$ is the joint eigenket of $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z as usual. This establishes

$$\begin{aligned} &\sqrt{(1\mp\alpha)(2\pm\alpha)}\big\langle jm\big|Z_{\alpha\pm1}\big|jm'\big\rangle \\ &\quad+\big\langle jm\big|Z_\alpha\big|jm'\pm1\big\rangle\sqrt{(j\mp m')(j\pm m'+1)} \\ &=\sqrt{(j\pm m')(j\mp m'+1)}\big\langle jm\mp1\big|Z_\alpha\big|jm'\big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.19}$$

We compare this recurrence relation with the recurrence relation obeyed by the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients $\big\langle j_1, j_2; jm\big|(j_1m_1)(j_1m_2)\big\rangle$ that we obtain by sandwiching $J_{1\pm} + J_{2\pm} = J_\pm$ with this bra-ket pair:

$$\begin{aligned} &\big\langle j_1, j_2; jm\big|(j_1m_1\pm1)(j_1m_2)\big\rangle\sqrt{(j_1\mp m_1)(j_1\pm m_1+1)} \\ &\quad+\big\langle j_1, j_2; jm\big|(j_1m_1)(j_1m_2\pm1)\big\rangle\sqrt{(j_2\mp m_2)(j_2\pm m_2+1)} \\ &=\sqrt{(j\pm m)(j\mp m+1)}\big\langle j_1, j_2; jm\mp1\big|(j_1m_1)(j_1m_2)\big\rangle\,. \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.20}$$

This latter recurrence relation (5.2.20) turns into the former one in (5.2.19) by the replacements

$$(j_1, m_1, j_2, m_2, j, m) \longrightarrow (1, \alpha, j, m', j, m)\,, \tag{5.2.21}$$

which is to say that we have the same recurrence relation twice. Since it is a linear relation, the solution of one recurrence relation is proportional to the solution of the other. This tells us that

$$\big\langle jm\big|Z_\alpha\big|jm'\big\rangle = U_{\boldsymbol{S},j}\big\langle 1j; jm\big|(1\alpha)(jm')\big\rangle\,, \tag{5.2.22}$$

where $U_{\boldsymbol{S},j}$ is a *universal* constant in the sense that it does not depend on m, m' or α but is specified by $\boldsymbol{S}$ and j solely. In particular, we have the $\alpha = 0$ statement for $m = m'$,

$$\big\langle jm\big|S_z\big|jm\big\rangle = U_{\boldsymbol{S},j}\big\langle 1j; jm\big|(10)(jm)\big\rangle\,. \tag{5.2.23}$$

In the derivation of this result, what was important about $\boldsymbol{S}$ is its vector character. We can repeat the whole story for any other vector operator, for which $\boldsymbol{J}$ is the most particular example. Thus, we also have

$$\big\langle jm\big|J_z\big|jm\big\rangle = U_{\boldsymbol{J},j}\big\langle 1j;jm\big|(10)(jm)\big\rangle\,. \tag{5.2.24}$$

We combine these four statements into one,

$$\big\langle jm\big|S_z\big|jm\big\rangle = \frac{\big\langle jm\big|\boldsymbol{J}\cdot\boldsymbol{S}\big|jm\big\rangle}{\big\langle jm\big|\boldsymbol{J}^2\big|jm\big\rangle}\big\langle jm\big|J_z\big|jm\big\rangle\,. \tag{5.2.25}$$

Of the three expectation values on the right-hand side, two are immediately available,

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle jm\big|J_z\big|jm\big\rangle &= \hbar m\,,\\ \big\langle jm\big|\boldsymbol{J}^2\big|jm\big\rangle &= \hbar^2 j(j+1)\,,\end{aligned} \tag{5.2.26}$$

and the third can be written as

$$\begin{aligned}\big\langle jm\big|\boldsymbol{J}\cdot\boldsymbol{S}\big|jm\big\rangle &= \frac{1}{2}\big\langle jm\big|\big(\boldsymbol{J}^2-\boldsymbol{L}^2+\boldsymbol{S}^2\big)\big|jm\big\rangle\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\hbar^2\Big(j(j+1)-l(l+1)+s(s+1)\Big)\end{aligned} \tag{5.2.27}$$

after taking a look at the square of $\boldsymbol{L}=\boldsymbol{J}-\boldsymbol{S}$. We remember, of course, that $\big|jm\big\rangle$ is here a shorthand notation for the joint eigenstates of $\boldsymbol{L}^2$, $\boldsymbol{S}^2$, $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z, denoted by $\big|l,s,j,m_j\big\rangle$ in (5.2.12).

So, the bottom line is

$$\big\langle jm\big|S_z\big|jm\big\rangle = \frac{j(j+1)-l(l+1)+s(s+1)}{2j(j+1)}\hbar m\,, \tag{5.2.28}$$

which we combine with $\boldsymbol{L}+g\boldsymbol{S}=\boldsymbol{J}+(g-1)\boldsymbol{S}$ to arrive at ($m\to m_j$ now)

$$\delta E_{\text{magn}} = \left(1+(g-1)\frac{j(j+1)-l(l+1)+s(s+1)}{2j(j+1)}\right)m_j\mu_{\text{B}}B\,. \tag{5.2.29}$$

In particular, for $g=2$, this gives

$$\delta E_{\text{magn}} = g_{\text{eff}}m_j\mu_{\text{B}}B \tag{5.2.30}$$

with an effective g-factor of

$$g_{\text{eff}} = \frac{3j(j+1)-l(l+1)+s(s+1)}{2j(j+1)}\,. \tag{5.2.31}$$

One may get the impression that it is not worth the trouble to use the $\boldsymbol{J}^2, J_z$ states for an evaluation of the magnetic energy shift. But in

the most important application to the *Zeeman*[*] *effect* in atomic physics — the lifting of the degeneracy in a magnetic field, the counterpart of the electric-field Stark[†] effect discussed in Section 6.7 of *Simple Systems* — there is an additional complication. It is the magnetic interaction between the magnetic moments of the electrons and the magnetic moments of their orbits created by the electric currents associated with the moving electron. These magnetic moments are respectively proportional to $\boldsymbol{S}$ and $\boldsymbol{L}$, so that we have an additional term in the Hamilton operator of the form

$$H_{\mathrm{LS}} = V_{\mathrm{LS}} \boldsymbol{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{S} \,, \tag{5.2.32}$$

where V_{LS} is a position-dependent coupling strength.

If such a *spin–orbit coupling* term is present, and not negligible, we cannot use the eigenstates of $\boldsymbol{L}, \boldsymbol{S}, L_z, S_z$ as unperturbed states because $\boldsymbol{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{S}$ does not commute with L_z and S_z. But it commutes with $\boldsymbol{J}^2$ and J_z. Similar to what we found for $\boldsymbol{J} \cdot \boldsymbol{S}$ above and used in (5.2.27), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \boldsymbol{L} \cdot \boldsymbol{S} &= \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{L} + \boldsymbol{S})^2 - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{L}^2 - \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{S}^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\big(\boldsymbol{J}^2 - \boldsymbol{L}^2 - \boldsymbol{S}^2\big) \end{aligned} \tag{5.2.33}$$

and can evaluate the expectation value of H_{LS} in accordance with

$$\big\langle H_{\mathrm{LS}} \big\rangle = \big\langle V_{\mathrm{LS}} \big\rangle \, \frac{\hbar^2}{2} \Big(j(j+1) - l(l+1) - s(s+1) \Big) \,, \tag{5.2.34}$$

where the expectation value $\big\langle V_{\mathrm{LS}} \big\rangle$ involves the spatial part of the wave function only.

[*]Pieter Zeeman (1865–1943) [†]Johannes Stark (1874–1957)

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 6

Indistinguishable Particles

6.1 Indistinguishability

At the atomic level, the physical entities, such as electrons, protons, atoms, or photons, possess no individuality. One electron is the same as any other electron in all respects — one speaks of *identical* or *indistinguishable* particles. This fundamental indistinguishability goes beyond the similarity that one can have at the level of classical physics. For example, when two billard balls bounce, someone not observing the collision may not be able to tell which ball came from the right and which from the left, but this information can be obtained. After all, we can follow the trajectory of any chosen billard ball and so can tell a ball from its look-alike.

Not so at the quantum level, where electrons, say, do not have trajectories that would be so well defined that one can follow them during a collision act. As a consequence, there is no physical significance of the labels that we use in the formalism for a number of electrons. The Hamilton operator for two electrons, for instance,

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\big(\boldsymbol{P}_1^2 + \boldsymbol{P}_2^2\big) + \frac{e^2}{\big|\boldsymbol{R}_1 - \boldsymbol{R}_2\big|} \tag{6.1.1}$$

does not change if the labels are interchanged, $H(1,2) \to H(2,1)$. This *invariance under permutation* of the labels of indistinguishable particles must be possessed by *any* operator corresponding to a physical observable, the Hamilton operator being one of them. Another example is the total angular momentum of the two electrons,

$$\boldsymbol{J} = \underbrace{\boldsymbol{R}_1 \times \boldsymbol{P}_1 + \boldsymbol{R}_2 \times \boldsymbol{P}_2}_{\substack{\text{orbital} \\ \text{angular momentum}}} + \underbrace{\boldsymbol{S}_1 + \boldsymbol{S}_2}_{\text{spin}}, \tag{6.1.2}$$

quite visibly the permutation $1 \leftrightarrow 2$ has no effect on $\boldsymbol{J}$ as a whole or on its orbital and spin constituents.

When we consider the center-of-mass position $\boldsymbol{R}_{\rm CM}$ and the center-of-mass momentum $\boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM}$,

$$\boldsymbol{R}_{\rm CM} = \frac{1}{2}\big(\boldsymbol{R}_1 + \boldsymbol{R}_2\big)\,, \qquad \boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM} = \boldsymbol{P}_1 + \boldsymbol{P}_2\,, \tag{6.1.3}$$

we note that these are symmetric under $1 \leftrightarrow 2$ as well. Not so, however, for the relative position

$$\boldsymbol{R} = \boldsymbol{R}_1 - \boldsymbol{R}_2 \tag{6.1.4}$$

and the relative momentum

$$\boldsymbol{P} = \frac{1}{2}(\boldsymbol{P}_1 - \boldsymbol{P}_2)\,, \tag{6.1.5}$$

which change sign when the labels are interchanged. As a consequence, physical observables cannot be functions of $\boldsymbol{R}$ and $\boldsymbol{P}$ themselves, only of their squares or their product.

We check this by inserting

$$\left.\begin{matrix}\boldsymbol{R}_1\\ \boldsymbol{R}_2\end{matrix}\right\} = \boldsymbol{R}_{\rm CM} \pm \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{R}\,, \qquad \left.\begin{matrix}\boldsymbol{P}_1\\ \boldsymbol{P}_2\end{matrix}\right\} = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM} \pm \boldsymbol{P} \tag{6.1.6}$$

into the Hamilton operator (6.1.1),

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \frac{1}{2M}\left(\left(\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM} + \boldsymbol{P}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM} - \boldsymbol{P}\right)^2\right) + \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}|} \\ &= \frac{1}{4M}\boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM}^2 + \frac{1}{M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 + \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}|} = H_{\rm CM} + H_{\rm rel}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.1.7}$$

where both the Hamilton operator for the center-of-mass motion,

$$H_{\rm CM} = \frac{1}{4M}\boldsymbol{P}_{\rm CM}^2 = \frac{1}{4M}(\boldsymbol{P}_1 + \boldsymbol{P}_2)^2\,, \tag{6.1.8}$$

and that for the relative motion,

$$H_{\rm rel} = \frac{1}{M}\boldsymbol{P}^2 + \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}|} = \frac{1}{4M}(\boldsymbol{P}_1 - \boldsymbol{P}_2)^2 + \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}_1 - \boldsymbol{R}_2|}\,, \tag{6.1.9}$$

are invariant under permutations of the labels 1 and 2, as they should be.

There is an additional lesson here, namely that the center-of-mass motion is the force-free motion of a system with mass $2M$, which is hardly surprising, and that the relative motion is that of a system with mass $\frac{1}{2}M$

in the potential energy $e^2/|\boldsymbol{R}|$. This reduction of the more complicated two-particle problem to two effective single-particle problems is extremely useful because it enables us to solve the two-particle problem by solving the one-particle problem of $H_{\rm rel}$. That relative motion is not the motion of a real physical object, it is the motion of an effective object, with an effective mass that is half the physical mass of either one of the two indistinguishable particles that are interacting physically.

Of course, this reduction is familiar from classical physics, and we recall that in the more general situation of two physical particles with different masses M_1, M_2, the effective mass of the relative motion is $\big(1/M_1 + 1/M_2\big)^{-1}$, which becomes $\frac{1}{2}M$ for $M_1 = M_2 = M$.

6.2 Bosons and fermions

So, having established that all physical observables are invariant under the permutation of the labels of indistinguishable particles, what about the kets, bras, Schrödinger wave functions, and so forth? We have

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle 1,2,t\big| = \big\langle 1,2,t\big|H(1,2) \tag{6.2.1}$$

for one labeling and

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle 2,1,t\big| = \big\langle 2,1,t\big|H(2,1) \tag{6.2.2}$$

for the permuted labeling. But $H(1,2) = H(2,1)$ so that

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\big\langle 2,1,t\big| = \big\langle 2,1,t\big|H(1,2)\,, \tag{6.2.3}$$

which tells us that $\langle 1,2,t|$ and $\langle 2,1,t|$ are solutions of the same equation of motion. Since this must be generally true, not just for some particular situations, we infer that $\langle 2,1,t|$ differs from $\langle 1,2,t|$ only by an overall phase factor,

$$\big\langle 2,1,t\big| = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\big\langle 1,2,t\big|\,, \tag{6.2.4}$$

and this statement must be independent of the originally chosen labeling because that has no physical significance. Therefore, we must also have

$$\big\langle 1,2,t\big| = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\big\langle 2,1,t\big| \tag{6.2.5}$$

with the *same* phase factor. The two statements are only consistent if

$$e^{2i\varphi} = 1\,, \tag{6.2.6}$$

which offers the options

$$e^{i\varphi} = +1 \quad \text{or} \quad e^{i\varphi} = -1\,. \tag{6.2.7}$$

Both are conceivable, as both are consistent with our general conclusions from the indistinguishability of the two identical particles under consideration. And, in fact, nature does make use of both options.

There are two kinds of particles:

bosons	have $\langle 1,2| = \langle 2,1|$, that is, the bras, kets, wave functions, ... are *symmetric* in the labels and do not change when the labels are permuted;
fermions	have $\langle 1,2| = -\langle 2,1|$, that is, the bras, kets, wave functions, ... are *antisymmetric* in the labels and are multiplied by -1 when the labels are permuted.

(6.2.8)

They are named after Bose* and Fermi. The fundamental symmetry properties

$$\big\langle 1,2\big| = \big\langle 2,1\big| \text{ for bosons}, \quad \big\langle 1,2\big| = -\big\langle 2,1\big| \text{ for fermions} \tag{6.2.9}$$

are often referred to as *Bose–Einstein statistics* or *Fermi–Dirac statistics*, respectively, thereby honoring as well the contributions by Einstein† and Dirac.

It is a well-established experimental fact, understood to a very large extent, but perhaps not fully, as a consequence of fundamental principles in quantum field theory, that all fermions have half-integer spin and all bosons have integer spin,

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{fermions have } s = \tfrac{1}{2}, \tfrac{3}{2}, \tfrac{5}{2}, \dots\,, \\ &\text{bosons have } s = 0, 1, 2, \dots\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.2.10}$$

Clearly, this link of statistical properties with intrinsic angular momentum, famously known as Pauli's *spin–statistics theorem*, is a fundamental property of quantum objects.

*Satyendranath BOSE (1894–1974) †Albert EINSTEIN (1879–1955)

The basic building blocks of atoms and atomic nuclei — the electrons, protons, and neutrons — all are spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particles and thus fermions. Most nuclei have an even number of neutrons, and since there are as many electrons as there are protons in a neutral atom, we observe that most neutral atoms are composed of an even number of fermions. Therefore, their total spin is integer, and the neutral atoms as a whole are bosons. Simply ionized atoms have one electron removed, so that they have an odd number of fermions as constituents, and thus have half-integer total spin, which implies that they are fermions. Likewise, doubly ionized atoms are bosons, and so forth.

In the much rarer cases where the nucleus has an odd number of neutrons, matters are reversed: The neutral atom is a fermion, the singly ionized atom is a boson, the doubly ionized atom is a fermion, and so forth.

As an important example, let us consider a system composed of two electrons. Each electron has two spin states, "up" and "down," that we denote by $|\uparrow\rangle$ and $ol|\downarrow\rangle$ as we did in Section 4.2.2, where we established the two-particle states to total spin 0 and total spin 1. The spin part of the *singlet* state in (4.2.18) with $s = 0$,

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|\uparrow\downarrow\big\rangle - \big|\downarrow\uparrow\big\rangle\Big)\,, \tag{6.2.11}$$

is *antisymmetric* under the permutation of the electrons, whereas the spin parts of the three *triplet* states in (4.2.18),

$$\big|\uparrow\uparrow\big\rangle\,, \quad \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|\uparrow\downarrow\big\rangle + \big|\downarrow\uparrow\big\rangle\Big)\,, \quad \big|\downarrow\downarrow\big\rangle\,, \tag{6.2.12}$$

are *symmetric* under the permutation of the electrons. It follows that the *spatial wave function* $\psi(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2)$ that goes with the singlet states must be symmetric,

$$\psi_{\text{singlet}}(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) = \psi_{\text{singlet}}(\boldsymbol{r}_2, \boldsymbol{r}_1)\,, \tag{6.2.13}$$

but that for a triplet state must be antisymmetric,

$$\psi_{\text{triplet}}(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) = -\psi_{\text{triplet}}(\boldsymbol{r}_2, \boldsymbol{r}_1)\,. \tag{6.2.14}$$

In this manner, the *total* state ket, the product of the spin part and the spatial part, is antisymmetric for both singlet and triplet.

A general construction begins with single-electron states $\big|a_1\big\rangle, \big|a_2\big\rangle, \ldots$ normalized and pairwise orthogonal, whereby the labels a_j comprise all

quantum numbers, those for the spatial degrees of freedom and for the spin. Then,

$$\big|\{a_j, a_k\}\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|a_j, a_k\big\rangle - \big|a_k, a_j\big\rangle\Big) \quad \text{with} \quad j < k \tag{6.2.15}$$

is a corresponding set of two-electron states, whereby the restriction to $j < k$ avoids double counting. If we adopt a widespread but rather awkward notation,

$$\big|a_j, a_k\big\rangle = \big|a_j\big\rangle_1 \big|a_k\big\rangle_2 \,, \tag{6.2.16}$$

where a tensor product is understood, we can write this as

$$\big|\{a_j, a_k\}\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \det \begin{pmatrix} \big|a_j\big\rangle_1 & \big|a_k\big\rangle_1 \\ \big|a_j\big\rangle_2 & \big|a_k\big\rangle_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{6.2.17}$$

which is known as the *Slater* determinant*. Such products of kets are best understood as products of their numerical representatives, the corresponding wave functions, and then the determinant construction is very useful because one can easily generalize it to three and more electrons. For example, for three electrons, one would have

$$\begin{aligned} \big|\{a_j, a_k, a_l\}\big\rangle &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} \det \begin{pmatrix} \big|a_j\big\rangle_1 & \big|a_k\big\rangle_1 & \big|a_l\big\rangle_1 \\ \big|a_j\big\rangle_2 & \big|a_k\big\rangle_2 & \big|a_l\big\rangle_2 \\ \big|a_j\big\rangle_3 & \big|a_k\big\rangle_3 & \big|a_l\big\rangle_3 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\Big(\big|a_j, a_k, a_l\big\rangle + \big|a_k, a_l, a_j\big\rangle + \big|a_l, a_j, a_k\big\rangle \\ &\qquad - \big|a_j, a_l, a_k\big\rangle - \big|a_k, a_j, a_l\big\rangle - \big|a_l, a_k, a_j\big\rangle\Big) \,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.2.18}$$

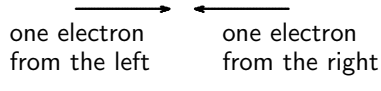
which is clearly antisymmetric under permutations of any pair of electrons, $1 \leftrightarrow 2$ or $2 \leftrightarrow 3$ or $3 \leftrightarrow 1$.

6.3 Scattering of two indistinguishable particles

The symmetry of the wave function for two indistinguishable particles has quite a lot of phenomenological manifestations of which the modification of the differential cross section for two-particle collisions is perhaps the simplest one. Consider thus the scattering of two electrons, which approach

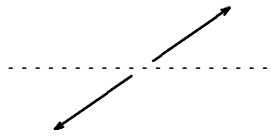
*John Clarke SLATER (1900–1976)

each other with equal but opposite momentum in the center-of-mass rest frame:



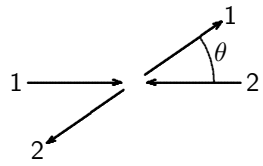
(6.3.1)

After the scattering, we have escaping electrons



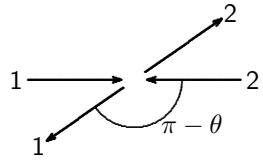
(6.3.2)

but we cannot tell which electron came from the left and which from the right. The two cases of deflection angle θ



(6.3.3)

and of deflection angle $\pi - \theta$



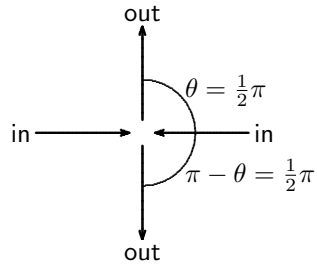
(6.3.4)

are utterly indistinguishable. Therefore, we must add the two respective scattering *amplitudes* to obtain the total scattering amplitude, before we square it to get the differential cross section,

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}(\theta) = \left| f(\theta) \pm f(\pi - \theta) \right|^2 , \tag{6.3.5}$$

whereby the upper sign applies for a symmetric spatial wave function (singlet) and the lower sign applies when the spatial wave function is antisymmetric (triplet).

Of particular interest is the *right-angle scattering*, that is, scattering under angle $\theta = \pi/2 = 90°$,



(6.3.6)

for which

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}\Big(\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}\Big) = \Big|f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big) \pm f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\Big|^2 = \begin{cases} 4\Big|f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\Big|^2 & \text{for the singlet,} \\ 0 & \text{for the triplet.} \end{cases} \tag{6.3.7}$$

For example, if both electrons are spin-up, we have the spin ket $\big|{\uparrow\uparrow}\big\rangle$ which is symmetric, so no scattering under $\theta = 90°$ will be observed. By contrast, if the electron from the left is $\uparrow$ and that from the right is $\downarrow$, we have a spin ket

$$\big|{\uparrow\downarrow}\big\rangle = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Bigg(\underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|{\uparrow\downarrow}\big\rangle + \big|{\downarrow\uparrow}\big\rangle\Big)}_{\text{triplet}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|{\uparrow\downarrow}\big\rangle - \big|{\downarrow\uparrow}\big\rangle\Big)}_{\text{singlet}}\Bigg), \tag{6.3.8}$$

which is an equal-weight superposition of the singlet state with a triplet state, so that we get 50% of each,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} &= \frac{1}{2}\big|f(\theta) - f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\big|f(\theta) + f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2 \\ &= \big|f(\theta)\big|^2 + \big|f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2 . \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.9}$$

This is *as if* there were distinguishable particles, but we just do not know which is which. For $\theta = \pi/2$, the outgoing electrons after the scattering will be necessarily in the singlet state because the triplet state does not scatter under 90°.

If the electrons are unpolarized before the scattering, then all spin states are equally probable and we shall have the singlet in $1/4 = 25\%$ of all cases

and the triplet for $3/4 = 75\%$. The observed differential cross section is then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} &= \frac{1}{4}\big|f(\theta)+f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2 + \frac{3}{4}\big|f(\theta)-f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2 \\ &= \big|f(\theta)\big|^2 + \big|f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2 + \Big(\frac{1}{4}-\frac{3}{4}\Big)2\,\mathrm{Re}\big(f(\theta)^* f(\pi-\theta)\big) \\ &= \underbrace{\big|f(\theta)\big|^2 + \big|f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2}_{\substack{\text{classically not}\\ \text{distinguished}\\ \text{particles}}} - \underbrace{\mathrm{Re}\big(f(\theta)^* f(\pi-\theta)\big)}_{\substack{\text{correction for}\\ \text{quantum}\\ \text{indistinguishability}}}, \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.10}$$

which has the terms of (6.3.9) for classically not distinguished particles plus a correction that accounts for the quantum-mechanical indistinguishability. At scattering angle $\theta = 90^\circ = \pi/2$, we thus get

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}\Big(\theta=\frac{\pi}{2}\Big) &= 2\bigg|f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\bigg|^2 - \bigg|f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\bigg|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\times 2\bigg|f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\bigg|^2, \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.11}$$

that is, a reduction by 50%.

So far these remarks apply to electrons or, more generally, to any pair of indistinguishable spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particles. For a pair of indistinguishable particles with spin $s = 0, \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2, \frac{5}{2}, \ldots$, we have the general relation (6.3.5) with its distinction between symmetric and antisymmetric spatial wave function. For bosons, the spatial wave function has the same permutation symmetry as the spin part, and for fermions, they have opposite permutation symmetry.

Now, two particles with spin s each have $(2s+1)^2$ spin states in total with magnetic quantum numbers m_1, m_2, say. There are the antisymmetric superpositions

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|m_1,m_2\big\rangle - \big|m_2,m_1\big\rangle\Big) \quad \text{with} \quad m_1 \neq m_2\,, \tag{6.3.12}$$

which are $\frac{1}{2}\big((2s+1)^2-(2s+1)\big) = (2s+1)s$ in number, and there are the symmetric superpositions

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\Big(\big|m_1,m_2\big\rangle + \big|m_2,m_1\big\rangle\Big) \quad \text{with} \quad m_1 \neq m_2 \\ &\text{and} \quad \big|m_1,m_1\big\rangle \quad \text{that is} \quad m_1 = m_2\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.3.13}$$

which are $\frac{1}{2}\big((2s+1)^2-(2s+1)\big)+(2s+1)=(2s+1)(s+1)$ in number. So, the fraction of the symmetric spin states is $(s+1)/(2s+1)$ and that of the antisymmetric states is $s/(2s+1)$. Therefore, the fraction of *symmetric spatial states* is $(s+1)/(2s+1)$ for bosons and $s/(2s+1)$ for fermions, and the fraction of *antisymmetric spatial states* is $s/(2s+1)$ for bosons and $(s+1)/(2s+1)$ for fermions. In summary, this tells us that the differential cross section for an unpolarized pair of indistinguishable particles is

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}(\theta)=\frac{s+1}{2s+1}\big|f(\theta)\pm f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2+\frac{s}{2s+1}\big|f(\theta)\mp f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2$$
$$\text{for}\quad\begin{cases}\text{bosons:}\ \ s=0,1,2,\dots\\ \text{fermions:}\ \ s=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2}\,\frac{5}{2},\dots\end{cases}\tag{6.3.14}$$

or

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}(\theta)=\big|f(\theta)\big|^2+\big|f(\pi-\theta)\big|^2\pm\frac{2}{2s+1}\,\mathrm{Re}\big(f(\theta)^*f(\pi-\theta)\big)\ .\tag{6.3.15}$$

For $\theta=\pi/2$, this gives

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)=2\Big|f\Big(\frac{\pi}{2}\Big)\Big|^2\Big(1\pm\frac{1}{2s+1}\Big)\quad\text{for}\quad\begin{cases}\text{bosons,}\\ \text{fermions,}\end{cases}\tag{6.3.16}$$

where the cross section for classically not distinguished particles, $2\big|f\big(\frac{\pi}{2}\big)\big|^2$, is multiplied by

$$1\pm\frac{1}{2s+1}=\begin{cases}2,\frac{4}{3},\frac{6}{5},\frac{8}{7},\dots & \text{for}\quad s=0,1,2,\dots\,,\\ \frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{4},\frac{5}{6},\frac{7}{8},\dots & \text{for}\quad s=\frac{1}{2},\frac{3}{2},\frac{5}{2},\dots\,.\end{cases}\tag{6.3.17}$$

There is an enhancement for bosons and a reduction for fermions. Note that the factors in the two sequences are the reciprocals of each other.

6.4 Two-electron atoms

6.4.1 *Variational estimate for the ground state*

The fermion nature of electrons is of utter importance and great consequence for the structure of atoms. To get a first glimpse at this matter, we consider two-electron atoms, such as neutral helium, singly ionized lithium, doubly ionized beryllium, ..., and also the negative hydrogen ion. All of

these have two electrons bound to a nucleus, which we shall regard as an infinitely massive point charge of strength Ze, with

nuclear charge Z	atom
1	H^-
2	He
3	Li^+
4	Be^{++}

(6.4.1)

and so forth for $Z = 5, 6, 7, \ldots$. For all of these, the Hamilton operator is

$$\begin{aligned} H &= \frac{1}{2M}\left(\boldsymbol{P}_1^2 + \boldsymbol{P}_2^2\right) - \left(\frac{Ze^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}_1\right|} + \frac{Ze^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}_2\right|}\right) + \frac{e^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}_1 - \boldsymbol{R}_2\right|} \\ &= H_{\text{kin}} + H_{\text{Ne}} + H_{\text{ee}}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.2}$$

taking into account the kinetic energy of both electrons

$$H_{\text{kin}} = \frac{1}{2M}\left(\boldsymbol{P}_1^2 + \boldsymbol{P}_2^2\right), \tag{6.4.3}$$

their interaction energy with the nucleus

$$H_{\text{Ne}} = -Ze^2\left(\frac{1}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}_1\right|} + \frac{1}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}_2\right|}\right), \tag{6.4.4}$$

and the electrostatic interaction energy between the electrons

$$H_{\text{ee}} = \frac{e^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{R}_1 - \boldsymbol{R}_2\right|}\,. \tag{6.4.5}$$

We are neglecting some finer details including, in particular, all spin-dependent interactions, such as the magnetic interaction between the magnetic moments carried by the electrons. In this approximate treatment, then, there are no interactions that depend on the absolute or relative orientation of the two electron spins.

Nevertheless, there is a spin dependence, namely a dependence on the total spin $\boldsymbol{S} = \boldsymbol{S}_1 + \boldsymbol{S}_2$, because the singlet sector, characterized by $\boldsymbol{S}^2 = 0$ or $\boldsymbol{S}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{S}_2 = -\frac{3}{4}\hbar^2$, has the symmetric spatial wave functions of (6.2.13), whereas the triplet sector, characterized by $\boldsymbol{S}^2 = 2\hbar^2$ or $\boldsymbol{S}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{S}_2 = \frac{1}{4}\hbar^2$, has the antisymmetric spatial wave functions of (6.2.14). Wave functions from these two classes are to be considered when searching for the eigenvalues of $H = H_{\text{kin}} + H_{\text{Ne}} + H_{\text{ee}}$ and so we should expect to have different sets of eigenvalues in the singlet and the triplet sectors.

Let us begin with the ground state. If it were not for the interaction energy, we would have just

$$H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne} = \sum_{k=1}^{2} \left(\frac{1}{2M} \boldsymbol{P}_k^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}_k|} \right), \tag{6.4.6}$$

which is the sum of two single-particle operators, each of the hydrogenic kind studied in Section 5.1 of *Simple Systems*. Accordingly, any product $\psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_2)$, of the wave function $\psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_1)$ to an eigenstate of the $k = 1$ term and the wave function $\psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_2)$ to an eigenstate of the $k = 2$ term, is the wave function to an eigenstate of $H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}$. The lowest energy obtained this way is for the product

$$\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2) \tag{6.4.7}$$

of the two $1s$-hydrogenic wave functions, for which

$$\Big\langle \big(H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}\big) \Big\rangle = -2Z^2\,{\rm Ry} \tag{6.4.8}$$

with ${\rm Ry} = Me^4/(2\hbar^2) = 13.6\,{\rm eV}$, the familiar Rydberg* constant, the natural unit of atomic binding energies. But this product is a symmetric wave function so that the minimum of $H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}$ is achieved for a singlet state. We can now treat the interaction energy $H_{\rm ee}$ as a perturbation and get a correction

$$\langle H_{\rm ee} \rangle = \int ({\rm d}\boldsymbol{r}_1)({\rm d}\boldsymbol{r}_2)\, \big|\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\big|^2 \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{r}_1 - \boldsymbol{r}_2|} \big|\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\big|^2 \tag{6.4.9}$$

to the $-2Z^2\,{\rm Ry}$ of (6.4.8).

In the triplet sector, the simplest wave function that we can build for $H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}$ is

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \Big(\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2) - \psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2) \Big) \tag{6.4.10}$$

(or ψ_{2p} in place of ψ_{2s}) which has one electron in the ground state of the hydrogenic single-electron Hamilton operator and the other in one of the first excited states. Now,

$$\Big\langle \big(H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}\big) \Big\rangle = -\left(Z^2 + \frac{Z^2}{4} \right) {\rm Ry} = -\frac{5}{4} Z^2\,{\rm Ry}\,, \tag{6.4.11}$$

*Janne RYDBERG (1854–1919)

which exceeds $-2Z^2$ Ry by much more than $\langle H_{\rm ee}\rangle$ can possibly account for. We conclude that the triplet state with lowest energy is an excited state; the ground state is a spin singlet.

The hydrogenic ground-state wave function

$$\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sqrt{\frac{Z^3}{\pi a_0^3}}\,\mathrm{e}^{-Zr/a_0}\,, \tag{6.4.12}$$

with the Bohr radius $a_0 = \hbar^2/(Me^2) = 0.529\,\text{Å}$, is suitable for an electron exposed to the nucleus all by itself. But now we have a second electron nearby, and this suggests to account for the electrostatic shielding of the second electron in a simple manner, namely by using

$$\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r}) = \sqrt{\kappa^3/\pi}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r} \tag{6.4.13}$$

instead, with an adjustable value for κ. Eventually, we expect to have $\kappa = Z_{\rm eff}/a_0$ for a good choice, whereby the effective value $Z_{\rm eff}$ for the nuclear charge should be between Z (no shielding) and $Z-1$ (full shielding of one charge unit),

$$Z - 1 < Z_{\rm eff} < Z \quad \text{(expected)}\,. \tag{6.4.14}$$

Applying the Rayleigh–Ritz variational method of Section 6.3 in *Simple Systems*, we choose the optimal value of κ by requiring that

$$\psi_{\rm singlet}(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) = \psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r}_2) \tag{6.4.15}$$

gives the minimal expectation value $\langle H\rangle$ of the Hamilton operator (6.4.2) for this single-parameter class of wave functions. The single-electron energies are

$$\Big\langle \big(H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}\big)\Big\rangle_\kappa = 2\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\big|\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{r}\big|\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2\right), \tag{6.4.16}$$

where the prefactor just doubles the contribution from one electron that is spelt out explicitly. The kinetic energy therein involves the integral

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{M}{\hbar^2}\langle H_{\rm kin}\rangle &= \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\big|\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2 = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\frac{\kappa^3}{\pi}\,\left|-\kappa\frac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r}\right|^2 \\ &= 4\pi\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r^2\frac{\kappa^5}{\pi}\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r} = 4\pi\frac{\kappa^5}{\pi}\frac{2!}{(2\kappa)^3} = \kappa^2\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.17}$$

where we have an application of Euler's factorial integral,

$$\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}x\, x^n\, \mathrm{e}^{-x} = n!\,, \tag{6.4.18}$$

which makes another appearance in the nucleus–electron energy,

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{1}{2Ze^2}\langle H_{\mathrm{Ne}}\rangle &= \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\frac{1}{r}\big|\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2 = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\frac{1}{r}\frac{\kappa^3}{\pi}\big|\,\mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r}\big|^2 \\ &= 4\pi\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r\, r\frac{\kappa^3}{\pi}\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r} = 4\pi\frac{\kappa^3}{\pi}\frac{1!}{(2\kappa)^2} = \kappa\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.19}$$

Taken together, the total single-particle energy is

$$\Big\langle \big(H_{\mathrm{kin}} + H_{\mathrm{Ne}}\big)\Big\rangle_\kappa = \frac{(\hbar\kappa)^2}{M} - 2Ze^2\kappa\,. \tag{6.4.20}$$

Upon recalling that $e^2/a_0 = (\hbar/a_0)^2/M = 2\,\mathrm{Ry}$, we can also present this as

$$\Big\langle \big(H_{\mathrm{kin}} + H_{\mathrm{Ne}}\big)\Big\rangle_\kappa = 2\big((\kappa a_0)^2 - 2Z\kappa a_0\big)\,\mathrm{Ry}\,, \tag{6.4.21}$$

which acquires its minimal value of $-2Z^2\,\mathrm{Ry}$ for $\kappa a_0 = Z$, as it should.

The expectation value of the electron–electron interaction energy,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle H_{\mathrm{ee}}\rangle_\kappa &= \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_1)(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_2)\,\frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{r}_1-\boldsymbol{r}_2|}\big|\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_\kappa(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\big|^2 \\ &= e^2\left(\frac{\kappa^3}{\pi}\right)^2 \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_1)\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_1}\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_2)\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_2}}{|\boldsymbol{r}_1-\boldsymbol{r}_2|}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.22}$$

requires the evaluation of this double integral. We first carry out the $(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_2)$ integration, for which $\boldsymbol{r}_1$ has a fixed direction and length, which we take to be along the polar axis for the spherical coordinates in $\boldsymbol{r}_2$ space that we employ in

$$\begin{aligned} \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_2)\,\frac{\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_2}}{|\boldsymbol{r}_1-\boldsymbol{r}_2|} &= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r_2\, r_2^2\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_2} 2\pi\int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\vartheta\,\frac{\sin(\vartheta)}{\sqrt{r_1^2+r_2^2-2r_1r_2\cos(\vartheta)}} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r_2\, r_2^2\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_2} 2\pi\frac{1}{r_1r_2}\sqrt{r_1^2+r_2^2-2r_1r_2\cos(\vartheta)}\,\Big|_{\vartheta=0}^{\pi} \\ &= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r_2\, r_2^2\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_2}\frac{2\pi}{r_1r_2}\big(r_1+r_2-|r_1-r_2|\big) \\ &= \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r_2\, r_2^2\,\mathrm{e}^{-2\kappa r_2}\frac{4\pi}{\mathrm{Max}\{r_1,r_2\}}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.23}$$

Accordingly,

$$\langle H_{\rm ee}\rangle_{\,\kappa} = e^2\left(\frac{\kappa^3}{\pi}\right)^2 (4\pi)^2 \int_0^\infty {\rm d}r_1\, r_1^2\, {\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_1} \times \int_0^\infty {\rm d}r_2\, r_2^2\, {\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_2} \frac{1}{{\rm Max}\{r_1, r_2\}}\,, \tag{6.4.24}$$

where the integral is twice what we get for ${\rm Max}\{r_1, r_2\} = r_2$ because the ${\rm Max}\{r_1, r_2\} = r_1$ part is the same. So,

$$\begin{aligned}\langle H_{\rm ee}\rangle &= e^2\big(4\kappa^3\big)^2 2 \int_0^\infty {\rm d}r_1\, r_1^2\, {\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_1} \int_{r_1}^\infty {\rm d}r_2\, r_2\, {\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_2} \\ &= e^2\big(4\kappa^3\big)^2 2 \int_0^\infty {\rm d}r_1\, r_1^2\, {\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_1} \left(r_1 \frac{{\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_1}}{2\kappa} + \frac{{\rm e}^{-2\kappa r_1}}{(2\kappa)^2}\right) \\ &= e^2\big(4\kappa^3\big)^2 2 \left(\frac{3!}{2\kappa(4\kappa)^4} + \frac{2!}{(2\kappa)^2(4\kappa)^3}\right) \\ &= \frac{5}{8} e^2 \kappa = \frac{5}{4} \kappa a_0\, {\rm Ry}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.25}$$

In summary, then,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2\,{\rm Ry}}\,\langle H\rangle_{\,\kappa} &= \frac{1}{2\,{\rm Ry}} \Big\langle \big(H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne} + H_{\rm ee}\big)\Big\rangle_{\,\kappa} \\ &= (\kappa a_0)^2 - 2Z\kappa a_0 + \frac{5}{8}\kappa a_0 \\ &= \left(\kappa a_0 - \Big(Z - \frac{5}{16}\Big)\right)^2 - \Big(Z - \frac{5}{16}\Big)^2 \\ &\geq -\Big(Z - \frac{5}{16}\Big)^2 \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.26}$$

so that the optimal choice for κ is

$$\kappa = Z_{\rm eff}/a_0 \tag{6.4.27}$$

with the effective nuclear charge given by

$$Z_{\rm eff} = Z - \frac{5}{16}\,, \tag{6.4.28}$$

consistent with the expectation in (6.4.14). The resulting optimized upper bound for the ground-state energy is

$$\langle H\rangle \leq -2Z_{\rm eff}^2\, {\rm Ry}\,, \tag{6.4.29}$$

which is a lower bound on the binding energy,

$$-\langle H\rangle \geq 2Z_{\text{eff}}^2\,\text{Ry}\,. \tag{6.4.30}$$

Here is a comparison with experimental values for $-\langle H\rangle/(2\text{Ry})$:

Z	experiment	estimate	error(%)
1	0.52776	0.473	10.4
2	2.9038	2.848	2.0
3	7.2804	7.223	0.79
4	13.657	13.598	0.44

(6.4.31)

Thus, except for $Z = 1$, the negative hydrogen ion H^-, we fare very well with this rather simple estimate.

For H^-, the lower bound of (6.4.30) is indeed so bad that the estimated binding energy is *less* than the binding energy of $1\,\text{Ry} = \frac{1}{2}\times(2\,\text{Ry})$ for a single electron in neutral hydrogen. That is, for our estimate, it is energetically favorable to have the second electron far away, which is to say there could not be a stable H^- ion. In fact, however, H^- ions can be made in copious amounts rather easily. It is clear, then, that a better estimate is needed to deal with H^-.

Perhaps the simplest better trial wave function is

$$\begin{aligned}\psi(\boldsymbol{r}_1,\boldsymbol{r}_2) &\propto \psi_{\kappa_1}(r_1)\psi_{\kappa_2}(r_2)+\psi_{\kappa_2}(r_1)\psi_{\kappa_1}(r_2)\\ &\propto \mathrm{e}^{-(\kappa_1 r_1+\kappa_2 r_2)}+\mathrm{e}^{-(\kappa_2 r_1+\kappa_1 r_2)}\,,\end{aligned} \tag{6.4.32}$$

which has two parameters, κ_1 and κ_2, rather than the single κ parameter of (6.4.15) and (6.4.13). This incorporates the simple idea that one electron will be closer to the nucleus and the other farther away, with the nuclear charge shielded more effectively for the far-away electron than the near-by one. The calculation is much more tedious for this wave function than for the $\kappa_1 = \kappa_2 = \kappa$ case above, and it is hardly worth the trouble for $Z = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$, but there is a substantial improvement for $Z = 1$, inasmuch as we get

$$-\langle H\rangle \geq 0.513\times 2\,\text{Ry}\,, \tag{6.4.33}$$

which exceeds $\frac{1}{2}\times 2\,\text{Ry}$ and thus confirms the existence of a stable H^- ion. This estimate is also quite good quantitatively, as the error is just 3%.

6.4.2 *Perturbative estimate for the first excited states*

For the first excited states, we shall be content with what we can learn from a perturbation-theoretical estimate. As discussed above, we use the unperturbed wave functions

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\big(\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2) \pm \psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\big) = \psi_{\pm}(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) \tag{6.4.34}$$

for the singlet (upper sign) and the triplet (lower sign), respectively. The single-particle part of the Hamilton operator has these wave functions as eigenfunctions so that we get, see (6.4.11),

$$\Big\langle \big(H_{\mathrm{kin}} + H_{\mathrm{Ne}}\big) \Big\rangle = -\left(1 + \frac{1}{4}\right) Z^2\,\mathrm{Ry} = -\frac{5}{4} Z^2\,\mathrm{Ry}\,, \tag{6.4.35}$$

as we have one electron in the hydrogenic $1s$ state (energy $= -Z^2\,\mathrm{Ry}$) and the other electron in the hydrogenic $2s$ state (energy $= -\frac{1}{4}Z^2\,\mathrm{Ry}$).

When evaluating the electron–electron interaction energy, which is the perturbation to the unperturbed single-electron part,

$$\langle H_{\mathrm{ee}} \rangle = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_1)(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}_2)\, \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{r}_1 - \boldsymbol{r}_2|} \big|\psi_{\pm}\big(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2\big)\big|^2\,, \tag{6.4.36}$$

we encounter

$$\begin{aligned} \big|\psi_{\pm}\big(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2\big)\big|^2 &= \psi_{\pm}(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2)^* \psi_{\pm}(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\big|\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\big|^2 \big|\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\big|^2 + \frac{1}{2}\big|\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\big|^2 \big|\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\big|^2 \\ &\quad \pm \frac{1}{2}\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)^* \psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)^* \psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1) \\ &\quad \pm \frac{1}{2}\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)^* \psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)^* \psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.37}$$

Of these four terms, the first two terms contribute equally and so do the second two terms. We adopt the convention that the argument of $\psi_{1s}(\ )^*$ is $\boldsymbol{r}$ and that of $\psi_{2s}(\ )^*$ is $\boldsymbol{r}'$ and so arrive at

$$\begin{aligned} \langle H_{\mathrm{ee}} \rangle &= \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \big|\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2 \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'|} \big|\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}')\big|^2 \\ &\quad \pm \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r})^* \psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}) \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'|} \psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}')^* \psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}') \\ &= (\text{direct term}) \pm (\text{exchange term})\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.4.38}$$

The *direct term* has the appearance of a classical electrostatic interaction energy between two charge distributions with the charge densities

$$-e\big|\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2 \quad \text{and} \quad -e\big|\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}')\big|^2 \tag{6.4.39}$$

as if the two electrons were smeared-out negative unit charges. No such interpretation can be given to the *exchange term*; it is of a purely quantum mechanical character. The exchange term has products such as

$$\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r})^*\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}) \tag{6.4.40}$$

of orthogonal wave functions, which means that such a product cannot have a definite sign (even if we manage to make it real everywhere), and therefore the exchange term is usually much smaller than the direct term, of the order of 10^{-2} Ry for helium. One can show, but we will not take the trouble, that the exchange term is positive. Of course, the direct term is immediately seen to be positive.

We so conclude that the $1s2s$ singlet state of He has a slightly larger energy than the $1s2s$ triplet state, the difference being twice the exchange term. The lowest-energy excited state is therefore the $1s2s$ triplet state, and it can only decay to the $(1s)^2$ ground state. But this decay process involves the change of the spin state from triplet to singlet, which means that a spin-flipping interaction is needed. The coupling to the electron spin is through its magnetic moment so that we need a magnetic interaction to induce the $1s2s \to (1s)^2$, triplet $\to$ singlet transition. Such magnetic couplings to the radiation field are quite weak, and therefore the $1s2s$ triplet state is extremely long-lived. It is the prime example of a *metastable* state in an atom.

6.4.3 *Self-consistent single-electron wave functions*

Rather than using the one-parameter trial wave function (6.4.7), we could write, more generally

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) = \psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}_2) \tag{6.4.41}$$

with a normalized single-electron wave function $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$,

$$\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\big|\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})\big|^2 = 1\,, \tag{6.4.42}$$

about whose structure we make no assumptions at the outset. The single-electron terms $H_{\mathrm{kin}} + H_{\mathrm{Ne}}$ then have expectation values that are just twice

the contribution of one electron,

$$\left\langle \left(H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne}\right)\right\rangle = 2\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}) \left(\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\left|\boldsymbol{\nabla}\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})\right|^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{r}\left|\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})\right|^2\right), \quad (6.4.43)$$

and the electron–electron interaction term has the structure of a direct term,

$$\langle H_{\rm ee}\rangle = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}') \left|\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})\right|^2 \frac{e^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'\right|}\left|\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}')\right|^2. \quad (6.4.44)$$

As another application of the Rayleigh–Ritz method, we determine the best choice for $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ as the one that minimizes

$$\langle H\rangle = \left\langle \left(H_{\rm kin} + H_{\rm Ne} + H_{\rm ee}\right)\right\rangle, \quad (6.4.45)$$

so we find it by requiring that $\delta\langle H\rangle = 0$ for variations of $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$. These variations are subject to the normalization constraint so that any permissible $\delta\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ obeys

$$\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}) \left(\delta\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})^*\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}) + \psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})^*\delta\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})\right) = 0. \quad (6.4.46)$$

For the response of $\langle H\rangle$ to variations of ψ_0, we get

$$\delta\langle H\rangle = 2\int \left(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}\right) \left(\delta\psi_0^*\,\phi + \phi^*\,\delta\psi_0\right) \quad (6.4.47)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(\boldsymbol{r}) = &-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}) - \frac{Ze^2}{r}\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}) \\ &+ \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}') \frac{e^2}{\left|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'\right|}\left|\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}')\right|^2 \psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}). \end{aligned} \quad (6.4.48)$$

Therefore, the variation of $\langle H\rangle$ vanishes if

$$\phi(\boldsymbol{r}) = \mathcal{E}\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}) \quad (6.4.49)$$

with some real $\mathcal{E}$, the Lagrange* parameter of the normalization constraint.

The equation that determines $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$,

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2M}\boldsymbol{\nabla}^2 + V(\boldsymbol{r})\right)\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}) = \mathcal{E}\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}), \quad (6.4.50)$$

*Joseph Louis de Lagrange (1736–1813)

has the appearance of a single-particle Schrödinger eigenvalue equation, but this resemblance is misleading, inasmuch as the *effective potential energy*

$$V(\boldsymbol{r}) = -\frac{Ze^2}{r} + \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{r}-\boldsymbol{r}'|} \big|\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}')\big|^2 \tag{6.4.51}$$

contains the electrostatic potential energy of one electron and so involves the unknown wave function $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$. In short, the equation that determines $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ is *nonlinear*. As a consequence, we cannot solve it with the methods developed for the linear Schrödinger equation. The crucial difference is that the equation for $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ does not obey the superposition principle: a linear combination of two different solutions is *not* a new solution.

The usual approach employs an iteration procedure:

(1) Take your present guess for $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ and evaluate $V(\boldsymbol{r})$ for it.
(2) Then solve (6.4.50) with this *fixed* $V(\boldsymbol{r})$, thereby obtaining an improved guess for $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ and an improved value for $\mathcal{E}$.
(3) Repeat as often as necessary. (6.4.52)

In this case, where the external potential is spherically symmetric, the solution for $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ will also be spherically symmetric, which reduces the complexity of the numerical problem quite a bit.

For an analogous treatment of the lowest-energy triplet state, we need an antisymmetric trial function, for which

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\big(\psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_2) - \psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_1)\psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_2)\big) \tag{6.4.53}$$

with

$$\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\, \psi_j(\boldsymbol{r})^* \psi_k(\boldsymbol{r}) = \delta_{jk} \quad \text{for} \quad j,k = 1,2 \tag{6.4.54}$$

is the simplest choice. The minimization of $\langle H \rangle$ under the constraint of this orthonormality condition then gives a coupled system of equations of the basic structure that we have seen for $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ in (6.4.50). There is now one equation for $\psi_1(\boldsymbol{r})$ with an effective potential energy $V_1(\boldsymbol{r})$ and another equation for $\psi_2(\boldsymbol{r})$ with an effective potential energy $V_2(\boldsymbol{r})$. The three constraints (normalization of ψ_1 and ψ_2 and their orthogonality) require three Lagrange parameters, three numbers of the kind of the $\mathcal{E}$ in (6.4.49). Once the equations are set up, one solves them numerically by an iteration such as the one described in (6.4.52), except that we now have to determine two wave functions and three Lagrange parameters.

6.5 A glimpse at many-electron atoms

This method of determining a best simple-structure approximation for the wave function can be applied to atoms with many electrons as well. But we need to be somewhat more systematic about the handling of the electron spin degrees of freedom. The wave function of a single electron is a two-component object ("spin-up" and "spin-down"), that of an electron pair has four components (one singlet state, three triplet states), and for N electrons we will have 2^N components to the wave function. Denoting by

$$\psi\big(\boldsymbol{r}_1, s_1; \boldsymbol{r}_2, s_2; \ldots; \boldsymbol{r}_N, s_N\big) \tag{6.5.1}$$

the component that has spin labels $s_1, s_2, \ldots, s_N$ for the electrons located at $\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2, \ldots, \boldsymbol{r}_N$, respectively, we note that this wave function must change sign when any two labels are interchanged, such as

$$\psi\big(\ldots; \boldsymbol{r}_3, s_3; \ldots; \boldsymbol{r}_8, s_8; \ldots\big) = -\psi\big(\ldots; \boldsymbol{r}_8, s_8; \ldots; \boldsymbol{r}_3, s_3; \ldots\big)\,. \tag{6.5.2}$$

The simplest wave function with this property is given by a Slater determinant, such as those in (6.2.17) and (6.2.18) for two and three electrons, respectively. For N electrons, we would write

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r}_1, s_1; \boldsymbol{r}_2, s_2; \ldots; \boldsymbol{r}_N, s_N) \propto \det \begin{pmatrix} \psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_1, s_1) & \psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_2, s_2) & \cdots & \psi_1(\boldsymbol{r}_N, s_N) \\ \psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_1, s_1) & \psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_2, s_2) & \cdots & \psi_2(\boldsymbol{r}_N, s_N) \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ \psi_N(\boldsymbol{r}_1, s_1) & \psi_N(\boldsymbol{r}_2, s_2) & \cdots & \psi_N(\boldsymbol{r}_N, s_N) \end{pmatrix} \tag{6.5.3}$$

with

$$\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}) \psi_j(\boldsymbol{r}, s)^* \psi_k(\boldsymbol{r}, s) = \delta_{jk}\,, \tag{6.5.4}$$

that is, the spatial wave functions for equal spin labels must be orthogonal. For opposite spin labels, the orthogonality is enforced by the spin degree of freedom and the spatial wave function can be identical, as is the situation for $\psi(\boldsymbol{r}_1, \boldsymbol{r}_2)$ in (6.4.41).

When minimizing the expectation value of the multi-electron Hamilton operator for a wave function of the Slater-determinant form (6.5.3), we get a coupled system of equations for the wave functions $\psi_j(\boldsymbol{r}, s)$: the *Hartree**–*Fock*† *equations*. These equations are solved numerically by an iteration that is analogous to the one described in (6.4.52). One gets quite

*Douglas Rayner Hartree (1897–1958) †Vladimir Alexandrovich Fock (1898–1974)

reasonable estimates for ground-state energies of atoms, but finer details very often require better wave functions. Those are systematically available as weighted sums of several Slater determinants, for example. Further details are beyond the scope of these lectures.

Nevertheless, we can gain a basic understanding of the general properties of many-electron atoms by adopting a different point of view. Atoms are held together by the strong attractive force between the nuclear charge and the electron charges, which more than balances the repulsive forces between the electron charges. This suggests a brutal approximation in which we ignore the repulsion among the electrons and focus solely on the attraction by the nuclear charge. Then, the electrons are individually obeying the Schrödinger equation for hydrogenic atoms, see (5.1.2) in *Simple Systems*, for which

$$-E_n = \frac{Z^2 e^2/a_0}{2n^2} \tag{6.5.5}$$

is the single-electron binding energy in the nth Bohr shell ($n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$) for nuclear charge Ze and a_0 is the Bohr radius, $e^2/a_0 = 27.2\,\mathrm{eV} = 2\,\mathrm{Ry}$. A Bohr shell with principal quantum number n has n^2 orbital states, as we recall from the degeneracy discussion in Section 5.1 of *Simple Systems*, and since there are two spin states for each orbital state, there are in total $2n^2$ states in the nth Bohr radius.

Now, imagine that we have a total of n_s filled Bohr shells. Then, the total binding energy is

$$-E = \sum_{n=1}^{n_s} 2n^2\big(-E_n\big) = \frac{Z^2 e^2}{a_0} n_s \tag{6.5.6}$$

and the count of electrons is

$$N = \sum_{n=1}^{n_s} 2n^2 = \frac{2}{3}\left(n_s + \frac{1}{2}\right)^3 - \frac{1}{6}\left(n_s + \frac{1}{2}\right). \tag{6.5.7}$$

We solve the latter for n_s in terms of N by iterating

$$\begin{aligned} n_s &= \left(\frac{3}{2}N + \frac{1}{4}\left(n_s + \frac{1}{2}\right)\right)^{1/3} - \frac{1}{2} \\ &= \left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{1/3}\left(1 + \frac{n_s + 1/2}{6N}\right)^{1/3} - \frac{1}{2}\,, \end{aligned} \tag{6.5.8}$$

that is, we begin with the first-order approximation

$$n_s \cong \left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{1/3} - \frac{1}{2}\,, \tag{6.5.9}$$

then insert this on the right-hand side of (6.5.8), and expand $\left(1+\cdots\right)^{1/3}$ to first-order to arrive at the second-order approximation

$$n_s \cong \left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{1/3}\left(1+\frac{1}{18N}\left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{1/3}\right) - \frac{1}{2} \tag{6.5.10}$$

or

$$n_s = \left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{1/3} - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{-1/3} + \cdots\,, \tag{6.5.11}$$

where the ellipses stands for terms of order $\left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{-3/3}$, $\left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{-5/3}$, and so forth.

This second-order approximation is fully satisfactory for this purpose. It gives us

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{-E}{\frac{1}{2}Z^2e^2/a_0} &= 2\left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{1/3} - 1 + \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{3}{2}N\right)^{-1/3} \\ &= 2.289N^{1/3} - 1 + 0.146N^{-1/3}\end{aligned} \tag{6.5.12}$$

for the energy of an atom with nuclear charge Ze and N electrons that do not interact with each other. In particular, we have for neutral atoms, $N = Z$,

$$\frac{-E}{\frac{1}{2}Z^2e^2/a_0} = 2.289Z^{1/3} - 1 + 0.146Z^{-1/3}\,. \tag{6.5.13}$$

Despite the crude approximation of noninteracting electrons, this resulting energy formula has the correct structure and even the numerical factors are not ridiculously off target. If one does a full-blown realistic calculation, the outcome is

$$\frac{-E}{\frac{1}{2}Z^2e^2/a_0} = 1.537Z^{1/3} - 1 + 0.540Z^{-1/3}\,, \tag{6.5.14}$$

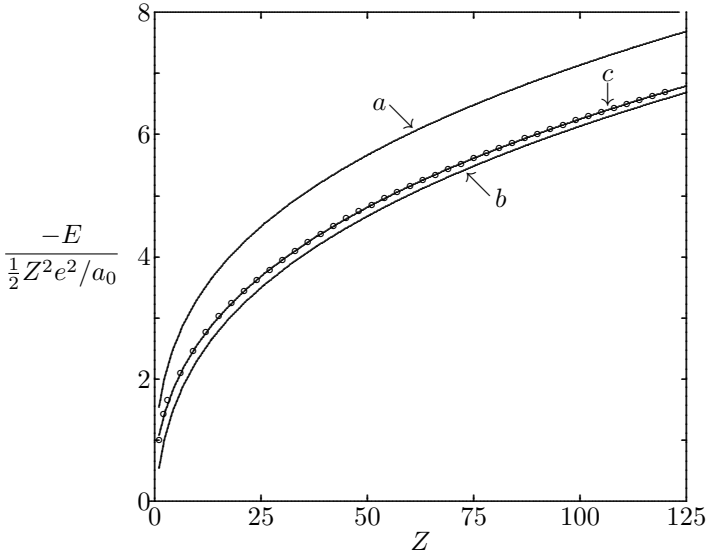
a remarkably simple expression for the total binding energy of neutral many-electron atoms.

The leading term in (6.5.14) is known as the *Thomas**–*Fermi energy* and accounts for the bulk electrostatic interaction. The next term, the simple -1, is the so-called *Scott*† *correction*, which results from a better treatment of the innermost, the most strongly bound electrons. For them, the singularity of the Coulomb potential of the nuclear charge is quite important. Finally, the third term, derived by Schwinger, accounts for the exchange energy among the electrons (nine eleventh) and a correction to the kinetic energy beyond its Thomas–Fermi approximation (two eleventh).

Note that there is no sign of atomic shells in the energy formula (6.5.14). The shells manifest themselves in the next, rather complicated, term that is oscillatory with an amplitude proportional to $Z^{2/3}$ and a period proportional to $Z^{1/3}$. The ubiquitous dependence on $Z^{1/3}$ originates in $n_s \sim N^{1/3} = Z^{1/3}$ as we established in (6.5.9).

This oscillatory term of the shell-filling represents contributions from the outermost electrons, which are so loosely bound that they cannot possibly contribute substantially to the total binding energy. We expect, therefore, that (6.5.14) is a very good approximation. Indeed it is.

To demonstrate the case, we compare the approximate formula (6.5.14) with the exact binding energies:



(6.5.15)

The circles indicate the exact binding energies for $Z = 1, 2, 3, 6, 9, \ldots, 120$

*Llewellyn Hilleth THOMAS (1903–1992) †John Moffett Cuthbert SCOTT (1911–1974)

and the smooth curves represent the successive approximations of (6.5.14),

$$\frac{-E}{\frac{1}{2}Z^2e^2/a_0} = \begin{cases} \text{curve } a\text{:} & 1.537Z^{1/3}\,, \\ \text{curve } b\text{:} & 1.537Z^{1/3} - 1\,, \\ \text{curve } c\text{:} & 1.537Z^{1/3} - 1 + 0.540Z^{1/3}\,. \end{cases} \tag{6.5.16}$$

Curve c goes right through the circles, except for hydrogen ($Z = 1$), where one would not expect the approximation to work in the first place.

What can we say about the size of many-electron atoms? Whereas a detailed answer would involve much more machinery than we have at our disposal, we can give a good rough answer. For this purpose, we note that the Z dependence of the Hamilton operator

$$H = \sum_{j=1}^{N}\left(\frac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}_j^2 - \frac{Ze^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}_j|}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\sum_{\substack{j,k=1\\(j\neq k)}}^{N}\frac{e^2}{|\boldsymbol{R}_j - \boldsymbol{R}_k|} \tag{6.5.17}$$

is solely in the electron–nucleus interaction term,

$$\frac{\partial H}{\partial Z} = -e^2\sum_{j=1}^{N}\frac{1}{|\boldsymbol{R}_j|}\,. \tag{6.5.18}$$

According to the Hellmann–Feynman theorem, we thus have

$$\left\langle \sum_j |\boldsymbol{R}_j|^{-1} \right\rangle = -\frac{1}{e^2}\left\langle \frac{\partial H}{\partial Z} \right\rangle = \frac{1}{e^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial Z}(-E)\,, \tag{6.5.19}$$

where the binding energy $-E$ is to be regarded as a function of Z and N. The leading term, as we found it in (6.5.12), is $-E \propto (e^2/a_0)Z^2N^{1/3}$ so that

$$\left\langle \sum_j |\boldsymbol{R}_j|^{-1} \right\rangle \propto \frac{1}{a_0}ZN^{1/3}\,. \tag{6.5.20}$$

On the left, we have the sum of inverse distances of all electrons. We divide by N to get the mean inverse distance for an electron and take the reciprocal to get the mean distance itself. This yields

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mean electron distance} &= \left(\frac{1}{N}\left\langle \sum_j |\boldsymbol{R}_j|^{-1} \right\rangle\right)^{-1} \\ &\propto a_0N^{2/3}/Z\Big|_{N\,=\,Z} = a_0/Z^{1/3}\,. \end{aligned} \tag{6.5.21}$$

So, a neutral atom with nuclear charge Z has a size given by (a numerical multiple of) the Bohr radius a_0 divided by $Z^{1/3}$. Somewhat surprisingly, we therefore learn that atoms with many electrons are of smaller size than atoms with few electrons. This is a consequence of the nuclear attraction dominating over the electron–electron repulsion, which has a tendency of averaging out to some extent because a single electron experiences repulsive forces from different directions, while all electrons are jointly attracted toward the nucleus.

It should be kept in mind that these observations concern the average distance of electrons from the nucleus. A different question, and one that is more relevant for chemistry, would ask about the distance from the nucleus of the most weakly bound electrons, those participating in spectroscopy and in the electron redistribution in chemical reactions. These outermost electrons are at a distance from the nucleus that is essentially independent of the atomic number $N = Z$.

Exercises with Hints

Chapter 1

1 Operator A has eigenvalues 0, +1, and −1. Write

$$f(A) = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{3}A}$$

as a polynomial in A,

$$f(A) = c_0 + c_1 A + c_2 A^2 \,,$$

with numerical coefficients c_0, c_1, c_2, after first showing that such a polynomial is the most general function of A.

2 Consider the spectral decomposition (1.1.17) and show that $f(a_j)$ is real if $f(A)$ is hermitian and that $|f(a_j)| = 1$ if $f(A)$ is unitary. That is, all eigenvalues of a hermitian operator are real; all eigenvalues of a unitary operator are phase factors.

3 Show that $U = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}H}$ is unitary if H is hermitian and that there is such a hermitian H for every unitary U.

4 Regarding (1.2.13), verify explicitly that

$$\frac{1}{N}\sum_{l=1}^{N}\big(U/u_k\big)^l\big|u_m\big\rangle = \big|u_k\big\rangle\delta_{km}$$

for $k, m = 1, 2, \ldots, N$.

5 Check that $\displaystyle\sum_{l=1}^{N}\big(U/u_k\big)^l$ is hermitian.

6 Show that

$$\mathrm{tr}\big(U^k V^l\big) = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} N \text{ if } \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}k} = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}l} = 1 \\ 0 \text{ in all other cases} \end{array} \right\}$$

and then relate f_{kl} in (1.2.39) to $\mathrm{tr}\big(U^{-k} F V^{-l}\big)$.

7 Next, cast (1.2.39) and (1.2.40) in the form

$$F = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{k,l} U^k V^l \, \mathrm{tr}\Big(\big(U^k V^l\big)^\dagger F \Big)$$

and conclude that the set of $U^k V^l$s is a basis in the operator space — Weyl's unitary operator basis.

8 For $F = \sum_{k,l} f_{kl} U^k V^l$ and $G = \sum_{k,l} g_{kl} U^k V^l$, express $\mathrm{tr}\big(F^\dagger G\big)$ in terms of the coefficients f_{kl} and g_{kl}.

9 What is the U,V-ordered version of $|u_j\rangle\langle u_k|$, of $|v_j\rangle\langle v_k|$?

10 Upon combining (1.2.13) and (1.2.42), we have

$$\big|u_k\big\rangle\big\langle u_k\big| = \delta(U, u_k) = \frac{1}{N} \sum_l \big(U/u_k\big)^l$$

and, therefore,

$$\sum_k \frac{1}{N} \sum_l \big(U/u_k\big)^l = 1 \,.$$

Verify this by a direct evaluation of this sum, that is, first sum over k and then over l.

11 For an operator F, we have

$$F = \sum_{k,l} f_{kl} U^k V^l = f(U;V) \,.$$

Express the trace of F in terms of the N^2 coefficients f_{kl} and also in terms of the N^2 numbers $f(u_k, v_l)$.

12 Show the following:

- If F commutes with U, that is, $FU = UF$, then F is a function of U only, $F = f(U)$.

– If F commutes with V, that is, $FV = VF$, then F is a function of V only, $F = f(V)$.

What is implied for an operator F that commutes with both U and V? The answer to this question is *Schur's** *lemma*.

13 Consider an arbitrary operator X and define F by

$$F = \sum_{k,l=1}^{N} V^{-l} U^{-k} X U^{k} V^{l} ,$$

that is, F is the sum of all N^2 operators obtained from X by the basic unitary transformations that result from repeated applications of U and V. Show that F commutes with U and with V. Then conclude that

$$F = N \operatorname{tr}(X) .$$

14 For odd N, that is, $N = 2M + 1$ with $M = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$, we define N^2 operators in accordance with

$$W_{00} = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{j=-M}^{M} \sum_{k=-M}^{M} U^{j} V^{k} \, \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\pi jk/N} \quad \text{and} \quad W_{lm} = V^{m} U^{-l} W_{00} U^{l} V^{-m}$$

for $-M \le l, m \le M$. Show that all W_{lm}s are hermitian and evaluate $\operatorname{tr}(W_{lm})$ and $\operatorname{tr}(W_{lm} W_{l'm'})$. In which sense are the W_{lm}s orthonormal?

15 Establish that an arbitrary operator F can be written as a weighted sum of the W_{lm}s,

$$F = \frac{1}{N} \sum_{l,m} f_{lm} W_{lm} \quad \text{with} \quad f_{lm} = \operatorname{tr}(F W_{lm}) ,$$

and express $\operatorname{tr}(F)$ in terms of the coefficients f_{lm}. Accordingly, the set of W_{lm}s is another basis in the operator space, composed of pairwise orthogonal hermitian operators.

16 For U_1 and U_2 in (1.2.59), show that $U = U_1 U_2$ has period 6.

*Issai Schur (1875–1941)

17 Combine (1.2.74) with (1.2.72) to first establish that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar} f(X,P)\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP/\hbar} = f(X-x,P)$$
$$\text{and} \quad \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX/\hbar} f(X,P)\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}pX/\hbar} = f(X,P-p)$$

and then use this in

$$\frac{\partial f(X,P)}{\partial X} = \frac{1}{x}\Big(f(X,P) - f(X-x,P)\Big)\Big|_{x\,\to\,0}\,,$$

for example, to derive (1.2.98).

18 What is the analog of Weyl's unitary operator basis in Exercise 7 for the continuous degree of freedom in Section 1.2.5, parameterized by the Heisenberg pair X, P?

19 For the azimuthal kets and bras of Section 1.2.6, consider the unitary operators

$$U^n = \int_{(2\pi)} \mathrm{d}\phi\,|\phi\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}n\phi}\langle\phi| = \left(\int_{(2\pi)} \mathrm{d}\phi\,|\phi\rangle\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi}\langle\phi|\right)^n,$$

where, as in (1.2.111), the integration is over any 2π interval and n is any integer, positive or negative. Apply U^n to an eigenket $|m\rangle$ of L; what do you get?

20 Compare $U^n\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L/\hbar}$ with $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi L/\hbar}U^n$. Do you get what you anticipate?

21 What is the analog of Weyl's unitary operator basis in Exercises 7 and 18 for the ϕ, L-type degree of freedom in Section 1.2.6?

22 Get (1.2.119) as an implication of (1.2.97).

23 Section 1.2.7: Guided by the ϕ, L example of Section 1.2.6, construct an undetermined observable for the case of $N = \infty$.

24 Supplement $\langle x, t_1|x', t_2\rangle$ in Section 1.4.1 by $\langle x, t_1|p, t_2\rangle$ but don't exploit $\langle x', t_2|p, t_2\rangle = \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}x'p/\hbar}/\sqrt{2\pi\hbar}$. Rather proceed from $\delta_F\langle x, t_1|p, t_2\rangle$ in analogy with (1.4.25)–(1.4.34).

25 Consider the Hamilton operator

$$H = \frac{1}{2M}\left(P - \frac{\partial\lambda(X,t)}{\partial X}\right)^2 - \frac{\partial\lambda(X,t)}{\partial t}\,,$$

where $\lambda(X,t)$ is an arbitrary "gauge function" that depends on the position operator X and parametrically on the time t. Does the force $M\frac{\mathrm{d}^2}{\mathrm{d}t^2}X$ depend on λ? Find the λ dependence of $\langle x,t_1|x',t_2\rangle$.

26 Consider the Hamilton operator

$$H=\frac{1}{2M}P^2+\frac{1}{2}\gamma(XP+PX)$$

with a rate constant γ. Show that $\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}(XP+PX)=\frac{2}{M}P^2$ and use this to find $X(t)P(t)+P(t)X(t)$ in terms of $X(t_1)$ and $P(t_2)$. Employ the quantum action principle to determine first $\delta_\gamma\langle x,t_1|p,t_2\rangle$ and then $\langle x,t_1|p,t_2\rangle$.

27 Why is the Hamilton operator in Exercise 26 unphysical?

28 Show that (1.4.41) implies

$$\delta\,\mathrm{e}^{\alpha A}=\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\alpha_1\,\mathrm{d}\alpha_2\,\delta(\alpha_1+\alpha_2-\alpha)\,\mathrm{e}^{\alpha_1 A}\,\delta A\,\mathrm{e}^{\alpha_2 A}\,,$$

where α is a positive real parameter that is not varied along with A, and both α_1 and α_2 are integrated from 0 to ∞. Note that two δs mean variations — namely of $\mathrm{e}^{\alpha A}$ and of A — whereas the third δ is for the Dirac delta function of $\alpha_1+\alpha_2-\alpha$.

29 Now use this and the identity

$$(\beta-A)^{-1}=\frac{1}{\beta-A}=\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\alpha\;\mathrm{e}^{-\alpha\beta}\,\mathrm{e}^{\alpha A}$$

to establish

$$\delta\frac{1}{\beta-A}=\frac{1}{\beta-A}\delta A\frac{1}{\beta-A}\,.$$

Which restrictions apply to β to ensure the convergence of the integral?

30 Justify the statement

$$\delta X^{-1}=-X^{-1}\,\delta X\,X^{-1}\,,$$

and then use it to derive the result of Exercise 29 directly, that is, without invoking the integral expression for $(\beta-A)^{-1}$.

31 First show that

$$\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon B}\,\mathrm{e}^{A}\,\mathrm{e}^{\epsilon B} \,=\, \mathrm{e}^{\,\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon B} A\,\mathrm{e}^{\epsilon B}}\,,$$

where A and B are operators and ϵ is a complex number, and then use this to demonstrate that

$$\Big[\,\mathrm{e}^{A}, B\Big] = \int_0^1 \mathrm{d}x\; \mathrm{e}^{(1\,-\,x)A}\big[A, B\big]\,\mathrm{e}^{xA}\,.$$

32 All eigenvalues of the hermitian operator A are positive. Verify that

$$\log(A) = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\alpha \left(\frac{1}{\alpha+1} - \frac{1}{\alpha+A}\right) = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\beta\, \frac{\mathrm{e}^{-\beta} - \mathrm{e}^{-\beta A}}{\beta}$$

are two valid integral representations of $\log(A)$. Then, consider an infinitesimal variation δA and establish

$$\delta \log(A) = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}\alpha\, \frac{1}{\alpha+A}\,\delta A\,\frac{1}{\alpha+A}\,.$$

33 Recognize two cases of Frullani's* integral,

$$a, b > 0\,:\quad \int_0^\infty \frac{\mathrm{d}x}{x}\,\big(f(ax) - f(bx)\big) = \log(a/b)\, f(x)\Big|_{x=0}^{\infty}\,,$$

in Exercise 32, which applies when $\displaystyle\int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}x\, f'(x) = f(x)\,\Big|_0^\infty$ is meaningful. Confirm the identity.

Chapter 2

34 Derive the second-order term in (2.1.11).

35 Begin with $S_0(t) = 1$ and find $S_1(T)$ as well as $S_2(T)$ from the iteration rule in (2.2.11). Compare with the Born series in (2.2.7).

36 The so-called *reaction operator* $K(T)$ is defined by

$$S = \frac{1 - \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}K}{1 + \frac{\mathrm{i}}{2}K}\,.$$

*Giuliano FRULLANI (1795–1834)

Show that K is hermitian. What is the first-order Born approximation for K? What about the second-order approximation?

37 For $H_0 = \frac{1}{2M}P^2$ and $H_1 = -FX$, what is $\overline{H_1}(t)$ in (2.2.6)?

38 Calculate the first- and second-order terms of the Born series for the example in Exercise 37.

39 What becomes of the Dyson series in Section 2.3 when H_1 commutes with H_0? Why is this case of little interest?

40 Verify the statement in (2.4.13), and relate the general short-time form (2.4.11) to the small-T version of $|\langle m|U(T)|n\rangle|^2$ that you get from (2.4.9).

41 Use the general procedure of (4.1.18) in *Basic Matters* for

$$D(\phi) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{1}{2}|\phi| & \text{for} \quad |\phi| < 2\,, \\ 0 & \text{for} \quad |\phi| > 2 \end{cases}$$

to give an alternative, and perhaps more convincing, derivation of (2.4.14).

42 Suppose $\overline{\psi}(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$ in (2.6.31) so that the atom is deexcited at time $t = 0$. What is the probability of having the atom excited at any later time t? At which times is the excitation probability largest? How large is it then?

43 What are the eigenvalues and eigencolumns of $\begin{pmatrix} \Delta/2 & \Omega_0^* \\ \Omega_0 & -\Delta/2 \end{pmatrix}$? What is their physical significance?

44 Find the explicit form for the terms proportional to $\dfrac{\partial\vartheta}{\partial t}$ and $\dfrac{\partial\varphi}{\partial t}$ in (2.6.47).

45 Consider the 2×2 Hamilton matrix

$$\mathcal{H}(t) = \hbar\omega \begin{pmatrix} \cos\bigl(2\phi(t)\bigr) & \sin\bigl(2\phi(t)\bigr) \\ \sin\bigl(2\phi(t)\bigr) & -\cos\bigl(2\phi(t)\bigr) \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{with} \quad \phi(t) = \frac{\pi t}{T}\,,$$

where $T > 0$. Use the eigencolumns $\psi_\pm(t)$ of $\mathcal{H}(t)$ to the eigenvalues $\pm\hbar\omega$ to write $\psi(t) = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha(t) \\ \beta(t) \end{pmatrix} = a(t)\psi_+(t) + b(t)\psi_-(t)$ and find the matrix $\mathcal{M}$ in

$$\mathrm{i}\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\begin{pmatrix} a(t) \\ b(t) \end{pmatrix} = \mathcal{M}\begin{pmatrix} a(t) \\ b(t) \end{pmatrix}.$$

46 Solve the differential equation in Exercise 45 to find $\psi(T)$ for $\psi(0) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$. What is the dominating T dependence of the probability $|\beta(T)|^2$ for $\omega T \ll 1$? And what is it for $\omega T \gg 1$?

47 What are the other two eigenvalues of the $\mathcal{H}(t)$ in (2.7.2) and what are the respective eigencolumns? Be sure to pay due attention to the proper normalization of the eigencolumns, and consider the limiting situations of $\Omega_1 \to 0$ while $\Omega_2 \neq 0$, $\Omega_2 \to 0$ while $\Omega_1 \neq 0$, as well as $\Omega_1 \to 0$ and $\Omega_2 \to 0$ simultaneously.

48 As noted in the context of (2.8.8), the operators can be at any common time in this equation. Now put $A(t_0) \to A(t)$ everywhere in (2.8.8) and compare $\mathrm{i}\hbar\dfrac{\partial}{\partial t}U\big(A(t);t_0,t\big)$ with $\mathrm{i}\hbar\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}U\big(A(t);t_0,t\big)$.

49 For the scattering operator introduced in (2.8.13), write

$$S(t_0,t) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-\mathrm{i}/\hbar)^k}{k!} s_k(t_0,t)\,,$$

where s_k involves k factors of $\overline{H_1}$. How do you get s_{k+1} from s_k?

50 Consider infinitesimal variations of $\overline{H_1}(t_0,t')$ at all intermediate times in (2.8.21) and establish the appropriate generalization of (1.4.41) to time-ordered exponentials.

Chapter 3

51 Use the Schrödinger equation that is obeyed by $\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)$ for the Hamilton operator in (3.1.9) to verify the continuity equation (3.1.8) for $\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)$ in (3.1.21) and $\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t) = |\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)|^2$.

52 For a different derivation of (3.1.18), return to (3.1.11) and use the Heisenberg equation of motion (1.3.2) for

$$F\big(\underbrace{\boldsymbol{R}(t),\boldsymbol{P}(t)}_{A(t)},t\big)=\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)=\big|\boldsymbol{r},t\big\rangle\big\langle\boldsymbol{r},t\big|$$

with the Hamilton operator in (3.1.9).

53 Show that

$$\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\boldsymbol{r}\rho(\boldsymbol{r},t)=\int(\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r})\,\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)\,.$$

54 For $H=\dfrac{1}{2M}\boldsymbol{P}^2$, force-free motion, and

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t=0)=\pi^{-3/4}a^{-3/2}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(r/a)^2}$$

with $a>0$, determine the total flux through the sphere $r=s>0$, as a function of time.

55 How would you have to modify (3.2.10) and (3.2.11) for $k(x)^2<0$?

56 Show that the scattering matrix $\mathcal{S}$ in (3.2.23) is unitary as a consequence of the continuity equation in (3.1.8).

57 Now write

$$\mathcal{S}=\begin{pmatrix}S_{++}&S_{+-}\\S_{-+}&S_{--}\end{pmatrix}=\begin{pmatrix}1&0\\0&1\end{pmatrix}-\mathrm{i}\begin{pmatrix}K_{++}&K_{+-}\\K_{-+}&K_{--}\end{pmatrix}$$

and determine K_{++}, K_{+-}, K_{-+}, and K_{--} to first order in $\dfrac{F(x)}{E-V(x)}$.

58 Use an idea from Exercise 36 to turn the first-order approximation in Exercise 57 into a *unitary* approximation for the scattering matrix $\mathcal{S}$.

59 In nuclear physics, one sometimes approximates the complicated forces by a *separable potential*, that is,

$$V=\big|\mathrm{s}\big\rangle E_0\big\langle\mathrm{s}\big|\,,$$

which is essentially the projector $|\mathrm{s}\rangle\langle\mathrm{s}|$ for some appropriate ket $|\mathrm{s}\rangle$ and its bra $\langle\mathrm{s}|$. What is the golden-rule approximation for $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$ in (3.3.15) for this V?

60 For the example in Section 3.3.2, determine the total scattering cross section

$$\sigma = \int \mathrm{d}\Omega \, \frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = 2\pi \int_0^\pi \mathrm{d}\theta \, \sin(\theta) \frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} \, .$$

How does it scale with E for $E \gg E_0$?

61 By

$$\overline{\cos(\theta)} = \frac{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}\Omega \, \frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} \cos(\theta)}{\displaystyle\int \mathrm{d}\Omega \, \frac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}}$$

one can define an average value of $\cos(\theta)$. How large is it for the Yukawa potential of Section 3.3.2? When $\overline{\cos(\theta)} \lesssim 1$, we can write $\overline{\cos(\theta)} \cong 1 - \frac{1}{2}\overline{\theta^2}$. Find $\overline{\theta^2}$ for $E \gg E_0$.

62 Consider the scattering by the double Yukawa potential

$$V(\boldsymbol{r}) = V(\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{a}) + V(\boldsymbol{r} + \boldsymbol{a}) \quad \text{with} \quad V(\boldsymbol{r}) = \frac{V_0}{\kappa r} \, \mathrm{e}^{-\kappa r} \, ,$$

where $\boldsymbol{a}$ is parallel to $\boldsymbol{k}$, that is, $\boldsymbol{k} \cdot \boldsymbol{a} = ka > 0$. Find the scattering amplitude $f(\theta)$ and the differential cross section $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}(\theta)$ in Born approximation. If it is observed that no scattering occurs in the three directions for which $\cos(\theta) = 0$ or $\cos(\theta) = \pm\dfrac{2}{3}$, how big is the spacing a between the scattering centers?

63 Find the Born approximation for $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$ for the hard-sphere potential

$$V(\boldsymbol{r}) = \begin{cases} V_0 & \text{if} \quad r = |\boldsymbol{r}| < a \, , \\ 0 & \text{if} \quad r > a \, . \end{cases}$$

Compare the total cross section with πa^2.

64 Find the Born approximation for $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$ for the gaussian potential

$$V(\boldsymbol{r}) = V_0 \, \mathrm{e}^{-\frac{1}{2}(r/a)^2} \quad \text{with} \quad a > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad V_0 = \frac{(\hbar/a)^2}{2M} \, .$$

Then determine the total cross section σ in terms of E/V_0. What is the dominating E dependence for $E \ll V_0$ and $E \gg V_0$?

65 Verify that

$$\boldsymbol{\nabla}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}'\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'} = -\mathrm{i}\frac{k}{r^3}\boldsymbol{r}\times(\boldsymbol{r}'\times\boldsymbol{r})\,\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}'\cdot\boldsymbol{r}'}$$

and then state the missing terms of (3.4.42) explicitly.

66 Show that the transition operator of Section 3.4.2 is

$$T = V\frac{1}{1-GV} = V\frac{1}{E-H+\mathrm{i}\epsilon}(E-H_0)$$

and explain why these explicit expressions are not so useful in practice.

67 For

$$\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}}\left(\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{r}} + \frac{\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}kr}}{r}f(\theta)\right)\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}\hbar k^2 t/(2M)}\,,$$

where θ is the deflection angle, $\boldsymbol{k}\cdot\boldsymbol{k}' = k^2\cos(\theta)$, determine the probability current $\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t)$ and verify the optical theorem in (3.4.74) directly by a calculation of the total flux through a sphere with a very large radius.

68 Derive (3.4.82) also from (3.4.55), the equation obeyed by T, that is, $T = V + VGT$.

69 The comparison of the particular result (3.4.82) with the general expression for T in Exercise 66 shows that we have $GV \to \mathrm{tr}(GV)$ effectively. Explain why this replacement is justified.

70 For $|\mathrm{s}\rangle$ such that

$$\langle\boldsymbol{k}|\mathrm{s}\rangle = \frac{2}{\pi}\sqrt{2k_0^5}\,\frac{1}{(k^2+k_0^2)^2} \quad \text{with} \quad k_0 > 0\,,$$

evaluate $\mathrm{tr}(GV)$ and then find $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega}$ and σ. Then check that the optical theorem holds.

71 Use $\mathrm{P}_l(-\zeta) = (-1)^l\mathrm{P}_l(\zeta)$ to show that $\mathrm{j}_l(kr)$ is real. This is the reason for the i^l prefactor in (3.5.7).

72 Find $\mathrm{j}_0(kr)$, $\mathrm{j}_1(kr)$, and $\mathrm{j}_2(kr)$ explicitly and then verify the large-kr behavior in (3.5.13) for them.

73 Confirm that you obtain the total cross section in (3.5.26) by integrating $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}\sigma}{\mathrm{d}\Omega} = \big|f(\theta)\big|^2$ over the solid angle $\mathrm{d}\Omega = 2\pi \mathrm{d}\theta\, \sin(\theta)$.

74 For both cases in (3.6.9), express δ_0 in terms of ka and κa. When do you get $\delta_0 = 0$, when $\delta_0 > 0$, when $\delta_0 < 0$? What is the physical significance of the sign of δ_0?

75 Justify the count of bound states with $l = 0$ in (3.6.21).

76 A particle of mass M and kinetic energy $E = \dfrac{(\hbar k)^2}{2M}$ is scattered by the delta-shell potential

$$V(\boldsymbol{r}) = V_0 a\, \delta(r - a) \quad \text{with} \quad a > 0 \quad \text{and} \quad V_0 = \frac{(\hbar/a)^2}{2M}\,.$$

Determine the total cross section σ_0 for s-wave scattering. Write σ_0 in the form $\sigma_0 = \pi a^2 f(ka)$ with a suitable function $f(ka)$ of the product ka. What do you get for $ka \ll 1$?

Chapter 4

77 Use (4.1.25) to find the 3×3 matrix representations of J_x and J_y, referring to the $|j, m\rangle$ kets, for $j = 1$. Then, find the eigenkets of J_x and J_y as linear superpositions of the $|j = 1, m\rangle$ kets.

78 Verify that

$$J_x \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -\mathrm{i} \\ 0 & \mathrm{i} & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad J_y \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & \mathrm{i} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\mathrm{i} & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad J_z \mathrel{\widehat{=}} \hbar \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathrm{i} & 0 \\ -\mathrm{i} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

are valid matrix representations for $j = 1$. To which bases of orthonormal trios of kets and bras do these matrices refer?

79 Consider two independent pairs of harmonic-oscillator ladder operators, $A_1^\dagger, A_1$ and $A_2^\dagger, A_2$ with the familiar commutation relations

$$\big[A_j, A_k\big] = 0\,, \quad \big[A_j, A_k^\dagger\big] = \delta_{jk}\,, \quad \big[A_j^\dagger, A_k^\dagger\big] = 0 \quad \text{for} \quad j, k = 1, 2\,.$$

In the *Schwinger representation*, we write

$$J_x = \frac{\hbar}{2}\big(A_1^\dagger A_2 + A_2^\dagger A_1\big)\,,$$
$$J_y = \frac{\hbar}{2\mathrm{i}}\big(A_1^\dagger A_2 - A_2^\dagger A_1\big)\,,$$
$$J_z = \frac{\hbar}{2}\big(A_1^\dagger A_1 - A_2^\dagger A_2\big)$$

for the cartesian components of the angular momentum vector operator $\boldsymbol{J}$. Show that the angular-momentum commutation relations are obeyed. Do you recognize the Pauli matrices of (2.9.10) in *Basic Matters* in these expressions for J_x, J_y, and J_z?

80 Now define operator J by $\boldsymbol{J}^2 = J(J+\hbar)$ and express it in terms of the ladder operators $A_j^\dagger, A_j$. How are the joint eigenkets $|n_1, n_2\rangle$ of $A_1^\dagger A_1$ and $A_2^\dagger A_2$ related to the angular momentum kets $|j, m\rangle$?

81 Determine the Clebsch–Gordan coefficients for $j_1 = j_2 = 1$.

Chapter 5

82 In (5.1.10), we have $\frac{1}{2}\big(\boldsymbol{V}\times\boldsymbol{B} - \boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{V}\big)$. How does this differ from $\boldsymbol{V}\times\boldsymbol{B}$?

83 Modify the respective expressions of Section 3.1 to derive the probability current density for the Hamilton operator (5.1.3), which is *not* of the form (3.1.9).

84 Section 5.1: The radius of the circle of the circular motion in the xy plane is the square root of

$$\big(\boldsymbol{R}_\perp(t) - \boldsymbol{R}_0\big)^2\,.$$

Does it have a definite value if ket $|n_+, n_-\rangle$ describes the state of the system?

85 For the asymmetric choice (2) in (5.1.20), find V_1, V_2 as well as $H_\perp$ and X_0, Y_0 in terms of X_1, X_2, P_1, and P_2. Verify that the commutation relations of (5.1.13) and (5.1.37) are obeyed.

86 Show that

$$\big[V_1, X_0\big] = \big[V_2, X_0\big] = \big[V_1, Y_0\big] = \big[V_2, Y_0\big] = 0$$

for *any* vector potential $\boldsymbol{A}\big(\boldsymbol{R}\big)$ to $\boldsymbol{B} = B\boldsymbol{e}_z$ and verify also that the commutators $\big[V_1, V_2\big]$ and $\big[X_0, Y_0\big]$ have the values of (5.1.13) and (5.1.37).

87 Now construct, quite generally, joint eigenkets $|n_1, n_2\rangle$ of $H_\perp$ and $X_0^2 + Y_0^2$ such that

$$H_\perp \big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle = \big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle \hbar\omega_{\text{cycl}}\Big(n_1 + \frac{1}{2}\Big)$$

and

$$\big(X_0^2 + Y_0^2\big)\big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle = \big|n_1, n_2\big\rangle \frac{2\hbar}{M\omega_{\text{cycl}}}\Big(n_2 + \frac{1}{2}\Big)\,.$$

88 Verify that (5.2.16) holds for Z_α in (5.2.15).

89 Write

$$\boldsymbol{J}\cdot\boldsymbol{S} = J_z Z_0 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} J_+ Z_{-1} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} J_- Z_{+1}$$

and use an argument analogous to the one that established (5.2.23) to show that

$$\big\langle jm\big|\boldsymbol{J}\cdot\boldsymbol{S}\big|jm\big\rangle = U_{\boldsymbol{S},j} c_j\,,$$

where the c_js are coefficients that can be expressed in terms of Clebsch–Gordan coefficients.

90 Show also that

$$\big\langle jm\big|\boldsymbol{J}^2\big|jm\big\rangle = U_{\boldsymbol{J},j} c_j$$

with the same coefficients c_j.

91 For g_{eff} in (5.2.31), do you get the expected values in the cases of $l = 0$ or $s = 0$?

92 At (5.2.14), we noted that $\delta E_{\text{magn}} = \mu_{\text{B}}$ is fourfold degenerate. Can you confirm this by using (5.2.30)?

Chapter 6

93 Write the orbital angular momentum

$$\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R}_1 \times \boldsymbol{P}_1 + \boldsymbol{R}_2 \times \boldsymbol{P}_2$$

in terms of center-of-mass and relative operators. Do you get what you expect?

94 Consider the possible states of two electrons. What is the value of $\boldsymbol{S}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{S}_2$ in the singlet state? What is it in the triplet state? Use this to express the projection operators for the singlet and triplet subspaces as simple functions of $\boldsymbol{S}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{S}_2$.

95 Evaluate the expectation value $\langle\uparrow\downarrow|\boldsymbol{S}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{S}_2|\uparrow\downarrow\rangle$ and explain the physical significance of the number you get.

96 Show that, more generally than the example in (6.4.23), *Newton's theorem* holds, that is,

$$\int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \frac{f(r')}{|\boldsymbol{r} - \boldsymbol{r}'|} = \int (\mathrm{d}\boldsymbol{r}')\, \frac{f(r')}{\mathrm{Max}\{r, r'\}} = \int_0^\infty \mathrm{d}r'\, \frac{4\pi r'^2 f(r')}{\mathrm{Max}\{r, r'\}}\,.$$

97 Evaluate the integrals for the direct and the exchange terms in (6.4.38) and state the energy difference between the singlet and triplet states in Rydberg units.

98 In (6.4.50) and (6.4.51), write $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r}) = \dfrac{1}{r} u_0(r)$ and state the nonlinear differential eigenvalue equation obeyed by $u_0(r)$.

99 Further, how is the expectation value $\langle H\rangle$ related to $\mathcal{E}$, once the solution $\psi_0(\boldsymbol{r})$ has been determined?

100 Regarding (6.4.53) and (6.4.54), derive the coupled equations for $\psi_1(\boldsymbol{r})$ and $\psi_2(\boldsymbol{r})$. Then show that you can reduce the number of Lagrange parameters from three to two by systematically ensuring that ψ_1 and ψ_2 are orthogonal.

Hints

1 Confirm that $A^3 = A$ and then proceed.

2 First establish $f(A)^\dagger = \sum_j |a_j\rangle f(a_j)^* \langle a_j|$.

3 The lesson of Exercise 2 is helpful.

4 Start with confirming that

$$\sum_{l=1}^{N} \mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\frac{2\pi}{N}(j-k)l} = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} N \text{ if } j = k \pmod N \\ 0 \text{ if } j \neq k \pmod N \end{array} \right\} = N\delta_{jk}^{(N)} ,$$

which introduces the modulo-N version of Kronecker's delta symbol.

5 Observe that the adjoint of $\big(U/u_k\big)^l$ is $\big(U/u_k\big)^{-l}$.

6 What is $\langle u_j|U^k V^l|u_j\rangle$?

7 A matter of inspection.

8 An application of the trace identity in Exercise 6.

9 Clearly, (1.2.30) is the main ingredient.

10 The identity in Hint 4 is useful.

11 Recall (1.2.39) and the identity in Exercise 6.

12 What can you say about the coefficients f_{kl} in $F = \sum_{k,l} f_{kl} U^k V^l$?

13 A follow-up to Exercise 12.

14 The Weyl commutation relations in (1.2.35) are needed.

15 A follow-up to Exercise 14.

16 Begin with $|a_1\rangle = |v_{11}\rangle$ and find $|a_2\rangle, \ldots, |a_6\rangle$ in accordance with (1.2.2).

17 No hint needed.

18 The operators $\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}pX}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}xP}$ or similar suggest themselves for Weyl's operator basis.

19 You should find that $U^n|m\rangle = |m+n\rangle$.

20 You could, for example, apply both unitary operators to an eigenket of L. Are you anticipating the Weyl commutation relation for the pair U, L?

21 Here, the operators $U^m\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\phi L}$ or similar suggest themselves for Weyl's operator basis.

22 Applying P on the bra or on the ket in $\langle x|P|p\rangle$ must give the same answer.

23 Note that you can map $j = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$ onto $m = 0 \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots$.

24 You need to express $X(t)$ in terms of $X(t_1)$ and $P(t_2)$, which is simple.

25 Note that the velocity operator $V = \dfrac{\mathrm{d}X}{\mathrm{d}t} = \dfrac{\partial H}{\partial P}$ has a parametric time dependence, which you need to account for in Heisenberg's equation of motion for V. You should find that the force does not depend on $\lambda(X,t)$, so the physical situation is that of force-free motion. Why does this tell you that the λ dependence of $\langle x, t_1|x', t_2\rangle$ is through a phase factor?

26 You could establish $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P = -\gamma P$, $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}P^2 = -2\gamma P^2$ and exploit $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}H = 0$. Note that $X(t_1)P(t_1) + P(t_1)X(t_1) = 2X(t_1)P(t_1) - \mathrm{i}\hbar$.

27 Complete a square and then conclude that H is not bounded from below.

28 This is straightforward.

29 Think of the eigenvalues of $\beta - A$.

30 Apply the product rule $\delta(AB) = \delta A\, B + A\, \delta B$ to XX^{-1}.

31 More generally, we have $Y^{-1}f(X)Y = f\big(Y^{-1}XY\big)$ (why?). Note that $[X,Y] = \dfrac{\partial}{\partial\epsilon}\,\mathrm{e}^{-\epsilon Y}\,X\,\mathrm{e}^{\epsilon Y}\Big|_{\epsilon\,=\,0}$ and remember (1.4.41).

32 Perhaps verify that you get the correct value for $\log(1)$ and the correct derivative of the logarithm. Remember the lesson of Exercise 29.

33 Write $f(ax) - f(bx) = f(tx)\Big|_b^a$ as an integral over t and then proceed.

34 Supplement (2.1.6) by the expression for the second derivative.

35 No hint needed.

36 Express K in terms of S.

37, 38 No hints needed.

39 Recall the basic assumption of perturbation theory, namely that we know H_0 well: its eigenvalues and eigenstates are readily available.

40 Explain why $\sum_m \big|\langle m|U(T)|n\rangle\big|^2 = 1$ is true for all n and then proceed.

41 You should find that $\delta(x - x'; \epsilon) = \dfrac{\epsilon}{\pi} \dfrac{\sin\big((x-x')\epsilon\big)^2}{(x-x')^2}$ is the corresponding model of the delta function.

42 No hint needed.

43 You may find the parameterization $\Delta/2 = \overline{\Omega}\cos(2\vartheta)$, $\Omega_0 = \overline{\Omega}\,\mathrm{e}^{\mathrm{i}\varphi}\sin(2\vartheta)$ useful.

44 Work out the parametric time derivatives of the rows on the right-hand side of (2.6.45) and (2.6.46).

45 Recall or show that

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos(2\phi) & \sin(2\phi) \\ \sin(2\phi) & -\cos(2\phi) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\phi) \\ \sin(\phi) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\phi) \\ \sin(\phi) \end{pmatrix}^\dagger - \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\phi) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(\phi) \\ \cos(\phi) \end{pmatrix}^\dagger,$$

then recognize $\psi_\pm$, and proceed. As a check, if you get it right, $\mathcal{M}$ does not depend on t.

46 Since $\mathcal{M}$ is traceless and hermitian, $\mathcal{M}^2$ is a multiple of the 2×2 unit matrix (verify this), which simplifies the evaluation of $\mathrm{e}^{-\mathrm{i}t\mathcal{M}}$.

47 The other eigenvalues are $\frac{1}{2}\omega \pm \sqrt{\frac{1}{4}\omega^2 + |\Omega_1|^2 + |\Omega_2|^2}$.

48 This is an application of Heisenberg's equation of motion, with due attention to (2.8.8). You should find that

$$\mathrm{i}\hbar\frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}U\big(A(t);t_0,t\big) = U\big(A(t);t_0,t\big)H\big(A(t),t\big)\,.$$

49 Remember that $S(t_0,t)$ obeys (2.8.19).

50 Just be careful with the time ordering.

51 This is straightforward; you will also need the Schrödinger equation obeyed by $\psi(\boldsymbol{r},t)^*$.

52 Note that $\delta\big(\boldsymbol{R}(t)-\boldsymbol{r}\big)$ has no parametric time dependence.

53 Establish $\boldsymbol{r}\,\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\boldsymbol{j} = \boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot(\boldsymbol{j}\,\boldsymbol{r}) - \boldsymbol{j}$ and then proceed.

54 Remember what is said about the "spreading of the wave function" in *Basic Matters* and *Simple Systems*.

55 Write $k(x)^2 = -\kappa(x)^2$ with $\kappa(x) > 0$ and then choose carefully between the four possibilities in $\sqrt{k(x)} = \pm\frac{1\pm\mathrm{i}}{\sqrt{2}}\sqrt{\kappa(x)}$ for the two occurrences of $\sqrt{k(x)}$ in (3.2.10).

56 Explain why here we have $\boldsymbol{\nabla}\cdot\boldsymbol{j}(\boldsymbol{r},t) \to \frac{\partial}{\partial x}j(k,x) = 0$ with $j(k,x)$ in (3.2.11) and then proceed.

57 Supplement (3.2.21) with the first-order terms implied by (3.2.17).

58 What is S in Exercise 36 to first order in K?

59 You cannot use (3.3.15) here, but (3.3.13) is adequate.

60, 61 Use $x = \cos(\theta)$ as the integration variable.

62 You have a sum of two terms of the kind in (3.3.24), dressed up with $\boldsymbol{a}$-dependent phase factors, so that there are scattering angles with constructive or destructive interference.

63, 64 Two applications of (3.3.20).

65 You need $\boldsymbol{\nabla}\boldsymbol{r} = \mathbf{1}$ (unit dyadic) and $\boldsymbol{\nabla}\dfrac{1}{r} = -\dfrac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r^3}$ in $\boldsymbol{\nabla}\boldsymbol{k}' = \boldsymbol{\nabla} k\dfrac{\boldsymbol{r}}{r}$.

66 Solve (3.4.55) for T or recognize a geometric series in (3.4.60).

67 First show that the total flux vanishes, then examine the various terms that contribute to it, and remember that this $\psi(\boldsymbol{r}, t)$ represents a large-r approximation.

68, 69 Show that $VGV = \mathrm{tr}(VG)V$ for $V = |\mathrm{s}\rangle E_0 \langle \mathrm{s}|$ and then proceed.

70 The evaluation of the trace is a bit tedious; the rest is easy. Write $E = (\hbar\kappa)^2/(2M)$ with $\kappa > 0$ and establish

$$\mathrm{tr}(GV) = \frac{2ME}{\hbar^2}\frac{16}{\pi}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{d}k\, \frac{k_0^5\, k^2}{\left(k^2 + k_0^2\right)^4}\frac{1}{\kappa^2 - k^2 + \mathrm{i}\epsilon}\,.$$

Then use contour integration with due attention to the poles at $k = \pm \mathrm{i}k_0$ and $k = \pm(\kappa + \mathrm{i}\epsilon)$.

71 You can exploit either (3.5.7) or (3.5.9).

72 One option is to get $\mathrm{P}_0(\zeta)$, $\mathrm{P}_1(\zeta)$, and $\mathrm{P}_2(\zeta)$ from the generating function in (5.2.34) in *Simple Systems* and then find $\mathrm{j}_0(kr)$, $\mathrm{j}_1(kr)$, and $\mathrm{j}_2(kr)$ from (3.5.9).

73 The orthogonality relation for the Legendre polynomials in (3.5.8) is crucial.

74 Use standard trigonometric identities such as

$$\tan(\delta_0) = \frac{\tan(ka + \delta_0) - \tan(ka)}{1 + \tan(ka + \delta_0)\tan(ka)}$$

with $\tan(ka + \delta_0)$ available in (3.6.9).

75 Adapt the discussion in Section 5.5.1 of *Basic Matters* fittingly.

76 Here you have (3.6.4) for $r > a$ and also for $r < a$ and a discontinuous derivative of $u_0(r)$ at $r = a$.

77 You should find

$$J_+ = J_x + \mathrm{i}J_y = \Big(\,|1,1\rangle\ |1,0\rangle\ |1,-1\rangle\,\Big)\hbar\begin{pmatrix}0&\sqrt{2}&0\\0&0&\sqrt{2}\\0&0&0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}\langle 1,1|\\ \langle 1,0|\\ \langle 1,-1|\end{pmatrix}$$
$$\mathrel{\widehat{=}}\ \hbar\begin{pmatrix}0&\sqrt{2}&0\\0&0&\sqrt{2}\\0&0&0\end{pmatrix}.$$

78 A matter of inspection: Do you get what you should for the squares of the operators and their commutators? The bases are made up by the eigenstates with eigenvalue $0\hbar$ for J_x, J_y, and J_z.

79 Clearly, $J_x = \dfrac{\hbar}{2}\Big(\,A_1^\dagger\ A_2^\dagger\,\Big)\begin{pmatrix}0&1\\1&0\end{pmatrix}\begin{pmatrix}A_1\\A_2\end{pmatrix}$ with the Pauli matrix for σ_x and likewise for J_y and σ_y as well as J_z and σ_z. Establish

$$\Big[A_j^\dagger A_k, A_l^\dagger A_m\Big] = A_j^\dagger \delta_{kl} A_m - A_l^\dagger \delta_{jm} A_k$$

and then proceed with the checking of the commutators.

80 You should find that $J = \dfrac{\hbar}{2}\big(A_1^\dagger A_1 + A_2^\dagger A_2\big)$ and $|n_1, n_2\rangle = |j, m\rangle$ with $n_1 = j + m$ and $n_2 = j - m$.

81 Execute the steps described in Section 4.2.1.

82 Explain why this asks about $\frac{1}{2}\big(\boldsymbol{V}\times\boldsymbol{B}+\boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{V}\big)$ and why the replacement $\boldsymbol{V} \to M^{-1}\boldsymbol{P}$ is permissible and then proceed and arrive at

$$\frac{1}{2}\big(\,\boldsymbol{V}\times\boldsymbol{B} + \boldsymbol{B}\times\boldsymbol{V}\,\big) = -\frac{\mathrm{i}\hbar}{2M}\boldsymbol{\nabla}\times\boldsymbol{B}\,.$$

83 The critical step is in (3.1.13) where $\dfrac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t}\boldsymbol{R} = M^{-1}\boldsymbol{P}$ is not correct for a charge in a magnetic field.

84 Square both sides in (5.1.33) to establish

$$\big(\boldsymbol{R}_\perp(t) - \boldsymbol{R}_0\big)^2 = \frac{2}{M\omega_{\mathrm{cycl}}}H_\perp$$

and then proceed.

85, 86 These two exercises do not need hints.

87 Identify two pairs of operators with Heisenberg-type commutation relations, such as $[V_1, V_2]$ in (5.1.13) and then introduce harmonic-oscillator ladder operators accordingly.

88 A matter of inspection.

89, 90 No additional hints needed.

91 Explain why $j = l$ when $s = 0$ and $j = s$ when $l = 0$ and then proceed.

92 Remember the intricacies of perturbation theory for degenerate states discussed in Section 6.6 of *Simple Systems*.

93 Of course, you expect that $\boldsymbol{L} = \boldsymbol{R}_{\mathrm{CM}} \times \boldsymbol{P}_{\mathrm{CM}} + \boldsymbol{R} \times \boldsymbol{P}$, don't you? Now confirm this.

94 You know the square of $\boldsymbol{S} = \boldsymbol{S}_1 + \boldsymbol{S}_2$ for the singlet and the triplet; you also know the squares of $\boldsymbol{S}_1$ and $\boldsymbol{S}_2$.

95 What does the expectation value of $\boldsymbol{S}_1 \cdot \boldsymbol{S}_2$ tell you about the singlet fraction and the triplet fraction in the two-electron state under consideration?

96 A straightforward generalization of (6.4.23).

97 Recall from Section 5.2.2 in *Simple Systems* that the hydrogenic wave functions are $\psi_{1s}(\boldsymbol{r}) \propto \mathrm{e}^{-Zr/a_0}$ and $\psi_{2s}(\boldsymbol{r}) \propto \big(1 - Zr/(2a_0)\big)\,\mathrm{e}^{-Zr/(2a_0)}$ and recognize another application of Newton's theorem.

98 No hint needed.

99 Make sure that the interaction energy is not counted twice.

100 Modify the procedure that produced (6.4.50) and (6.4.51) fittingly.

Index

Note: Page numbers preceded by the letters BM or SS refer to *Basic Matters* and *Simple Systems*, respectively.

above-barrier reflection BM208
action 33, BM127
action principle *see* quantum action principle
adiabatic approximation 71
adiabatic population transfer 71–73
adjoint 1, SS10
– of a bra 1, BM34, SS10
– of a column BM25
– of a ket 1, BM34, SS10
– of a ket-bra BM37
– of a linear combination SS11
– of a product BM37, SS18
– of an operator BM37
Airy, George Bidell BM155
Airy function BM155, 207
algebraic completeness
– of complementary pairs 12–14
– of position and momentum SS29–33
amplitude
– column of ∼s BM92, 94
– in and out ∼s 86
– incoming ∼ 82
– normalized ∼ BM181
– probability ∼ 2
–– composition law for ∼∼s 5
– probability ∼ BM20–29, 33, 34, 36, 105, SS2, 13
–– time dependent ∼∼ BM90–94, 102
– reflected ∼ BM181, 188
– relative ∼ BM181
– transmitted ∼ BM181, 188
angular momentum 25, SS93
– addition 119–122
– and harmonic oscillators 176
– commutation relations 117
– eigenstates SS102
–– orthonormality SS103
– eigenvalues 119, SS102
– intrinsic ∼ *see* spin
– ladder operators 118, SS102
– orbital ∼ *see* orbital angular momentum
– Schwinger representation 176
– total ∼ 117
– vector operator 105, SS93
angular velocity BM87
– vector BM91
as-if reality BM55, SS27
Aspect, Alain BM63
atom pairs BM57–64
– entangled ∼ BM57–64

– statistical operator BM58, 61
axis vector SS116
azimuth SS109
– is 2π periodic SS109
azimuthal wave functions SS120
– orthonormality SS121

Baker, Henry Frederick SS36
Baker–Campbell–Hausdorff relation SS35, 36, 38
Bargmann, Valentine SS81
bases
– completeness 24, BM37, SS6
– for bras 3, 6, BM34, 46, 59, 70, SS15
– for kets 3, 6, 7, 68, 106, BM33, 46, 59, 67, 70, 99, SS15, 108
– for operators 166, BM198, 199, SS169
– for vectors BM33, SS4
– harmonic oscillator ∼ BM170
– mutually unbiased ∼ 7
– orthonormal ∼ BM36
– unbiased ∼ 6, 11, 24
– unitary operator maps ∼ BM75
Bell, John Stewart BM4, 5
Bell correlation BM5, 6, 57
Bell inequality BM7, 62
– is wrong BM64
– violated by quantum correlations BM60, 63
Bergmann, Klaas 73
Bessel, Friedrich Wilhelm 107
Bessel functions, spherical ∼ *see* spherical Bessel functions
beta function integral 37
Binnig, Gerd BM191
binomial factor SS175
binomial theorem SS185
bit
– classical ∼ BM68
– quantum ∼ BM68
Bloch, Felix BM54
Bloch vector BM54
Bohr, Niels Henrik David 14, 104, 132, SS113
Bohr energies SS125, 150
Bohr magneton 132, BM202
Bohr radius SS113
Bohr shells 124, 160, SS125
Bohr's principle of complementarity *see* complementarity principle
Born, Max 43, BM52, 115, SS31
Born rule BM51–55
Born series 43, 48, 77, 102
– evolution operator 43
– formal summation 47
– scattering operator 45
– self-repeating pattern 45
– transition operator 102
Born–Heisenberg commutator *see* Heisenberg commutator
Bose, Satyendranath 142
Bose–Einstein statistics 142
bosons 142, 148
bound states BM181
– delta potential BM173–177
– hard-sphere potential 113
– hydrogenic atoms SS116
– square-well potential BM182–186
bra 1, BM31–34, SS9–15
– adjoint of a ∼ 1, BM34
– analog of row-type vector SS10
– bases for ∼s *see* bases, for bras
– column of ∼s BM36, 50, 93
– eigen∼ BM42–46
– infinite row for ∼ BM170
– inner product of ∼s *see* inner product, of bras
– metrical dimension SS17
– orthonormal ∼s BM36
– phase arbitrariness SS28
– physical ∼ SS12
– row for ∼ BM96, 101
– tensor product of ∼s BM59
bra-ket *see* bracket
bracket BM34–38, SS12, 21
– and tensor products BM59
– invariance of ∼s BM75
– is inner product BM35, SS11
Brillouin, Léon SS143, 158

Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory SS143–148
Bunyakovsky, Viktor Yakovlevich SS13

Campbell, John Edward SS36
Carlini, Francesco SS158
cartesian coordinates SS105
Cauchy, Augustin-Louis SS13
Cauchy–Bunyakovsky–Schwarz inequality SS13, 167
causal link BM6
causality BM1, 2
– Einsteinian ∼ BM6, 7
center-of-mass motion
– Hamilton operator 140
– momentum operator 140
– position operator 140
centrifugal potential 106, 110, SS111
– force-free motion SS111
classical turning point SS155, 156, 159, 165
classically allowed 83, SS155–157, 159, 165
classically forbidden 83, SS155–157
Clauser, John Francis BM63
Clausius, Rudolf Julius Emanuel SS128
Clebsch, Rudolf Friedrich Alfred 122
Clebsch–Gordan coefficients 122
– recurrence relation 135
closure relation *see* completeness relation
coherence length BM206
coherent states 62, SS81
– and Fock states SS83–84
– completeness relation SS81–83, 175, 176
– momentum wave functions SS176
– position wave functions SS77
coin tossing BM68
column BM25
– adjoint of a ∼ BM25
– eigen∼ BM96
– for ket BM96, 101
– normalized ∼ BM16, 25
– of bras BM36, 50, 93
– of coordinates SS4
– of probability amplitudes BM92, 94
– orthogonal ∼s BM25
– two-component ∼s BM15
column-type vector SS4
– analog of ket SS10
commutation relation
– angular momentum 117
– ladder operators BM164, SS78
– velocity 126
commutator BM83
– different times SS67, 173
– Jacobi identity BM84
– position–momentum ∼ BM115, SS31, 97
– product rule BM84, SS31, 186
– sum rule BM83, SS31
complementarity principle
– phenomenology 27
– technical formulation 14
completeness relation 3, 20, 22, 24, BM37, 69, 74, SS6, 14
– coherent states SS81–83, 175, 176
– eigenstates of Pauli operators BM46
– Fock states SS174
– force-free states BM151
– momentum states BM115, SS15
– position states BM106, SS15
– time dependence BM81, SS38
conditional probabilities BM65
constant force 35–36, BM153–158
– Hamilton operator 35, BM153, SS58
– Heisenberg equation 35, BM153, SS58
– no-force limit BM155–158
– Schrödinger equation BM153, 154, SS60
– spread in momentum SS59, 61
– spread in position SS59

– time transformation function 36, SS61, 173
– uncertainty ellipse SS59
constant of motion 130
constant restoring force SS132, 161
– ground-state energy SS134
context BM67
contour integration 95, BM176
correlation
– position–momentum ∼ SS55, 59, 172
– quantum ∼s BM60
Coulomb, Charles-Augustin de 90, SS113
Coulomb potential 90, 91, SS113
– limit of Yukawa potential 91
Coulomb problem *see* hydrogenic atoms
cyclic permutation 7, 16
– unitary operator 7
cyclotron frequency 128

de Broglie, Louis-Victor 83, BM117, SS159
de Broglie relation BM117
de Broglie wavelength 83, BM117, 123, 204, SS159
deflection angle 90, 145
degeneracy
– and symmetry BM150, SS90, 116
– hydrogenic atoms SS116
– of eigenenergies BM150
degree of freedom 6
– composite ∼ 15–16
– continuous ∼ 17, 25
– polar angle 25
– prime ∼ 16
– radial motion 25
delta function 20, BM107–109, 115, 119, 207, SS12
– antiderivative BM208, SS163
– Fourier representation 21, BM119, SS17
– is a distribution BM107
– model for ∼ 62, 182, BM108, 109, SS171
– more complicated argument BM152, SS19
– of position operator BM174
delta potential BM173–181
– as a limit BM186–187
– bound state BM173–177
– ground-state energy BM187
– negative eigenvalue BM176
– reflection probability BM181
– scattering states BM178–181
– Schrödinger equation BM175, 178
– transmission probability BM181
delta symbol 3, 20, BM69, 106, SS4
– general version 13, SS149
– modulo-N version 180
delta-shell potential 176
density matrix *see* statistical operator
Descartes, René BM40, SS3
determinant BM43, 44
– as product of eigenvalues 68
– Slater ∼ 144, 159
determinism BM1, 2
– lack of ∼ 26, BM4, 7, 8
– no hidden ∼ BM4–7
deterministic chaos BM7, 8
detuning 66
dipole moment
– electric ∼ SS154
– magnetic ∼ *see* magnetic moment
dipole–dipole interaction BM98
Dirac, Paul Adrien Maurice 20, 142, BM35, 106, SS9
Dirac bracket *see* bracket
Dirac picture 45
Dirac's delta function *see* delta function
Dirac's stroke of genius SS11
dot product *see* inner product
downhill motion BM155
dyadic SS5
– matrix for ∼ SS6
– orthogonal ∼ SS9
dynamical variables BM87
– time dependence 28
Dyson, Freeman John 47

Dyson series 47, 48, 77

Eberly, Joseph Henry 73
Eckart, Carl Henry 134
effective potential energy 158, SS111
eigenbra 2, BM42–46, 70, 81
– equation 2, BM42, 81
eigenenergies BM95
eigenket 1, BM42–46, 70, 81
– equation 1, BM42, 81
– orbital angular momentum SS104
eigenvalue 2, BM42–48, 70, 81
– of a hermitian operator BM77
– of a unitary operator BM76
– orbital angular momentum SS104
– trace as sum of ∼s BM198
eigenvector equation BM42
Einstein, Albert 142, BM6, 46
Einsteinian causality BM6, 7
electric field
– homogeneous ∼ SS150
– weak ∼ SS154
electron SS113
– angular momentum 123–124
– Hamilton operator for two ∼s 139
– in magnetic field
–– Hamilton operator 132
electrostatic interaction SS113
energy
– and Hamilton function SS39
– Hamilton operator and ∼ values SS39
energy conservation SS156
energy eigenvalues
– continuum of ∼ BM181
– discrete ∼ BM181
energy spread BM144, 146
entangled state BM60
– maximally ∼ BM200
entanglement BM60
entire function SS80
equation of motion
– Hamilton's ∼ 28, SS42
– Heisenberg's ∼ 27, BM2, 84, SS42, 43
– interaction picture 65
– Liouville's ∼ 29, SS44
– Newton's ∼ BM2, 128
– Schrödinger's ∼ 27, BM2, 83, SS40
– von Neumann's ∼ BM86, SS44
Esaki, Leo BM191
Euler, Leonhard 37, 152, BM28, 127, SS178
Euler's beta function integral 37
Euler's factorial integral 152, SS178
Euler's identity BM28
Euler–Lagrange equation BM127, 130
even state (*see also* odd state) BM153, 163, 178, 183, SS138
evolution operator 41, 43, 74, BM143, 149, SS39
– Born series 43
– dynamical variables 74
– group property 44
– Schrödinger equation 75
expectation value BM49, SS21, 25
– of hermitian operator SS168
– probabilities as ∼s BM49, SS24
expected value BM49
exponential decay law 56

face, do not lose SS134
factorial
– Euler's integral 152, SS178
– Stirling's approximation BM161
Fermi, Enrico 48, 142, 162
Fermi's golden rule *see* golden rule
Fermi–Dirac statistics 142
fermions 142, 148
Feynman, Richard Phillips 133, SS125
flipper BM14, 16, 19
– anti∼ BM19
Fock, Vladimir Alexandrovich 159, BM164, SS77
Fock states BM164–168, SS77, 86, 89, 174
– and coherent states SS83–84
– completeness relation SS174

– generating function SS83
– momentum wave functions SS176
– orthonormality BM169, SS175, 176
– position wave functions BM168, 169, SS175
– two-dimensional oscillator SS94
force 85, 169, BM148, SS130
– ∼s scatter 85
– constant ∼ *see* constant force
– Lorentz ∼ 125
– of short range BM174
– on magnetic moment BM11
force-free motion 127, BM131, 135–147, 150–153, 156
– centrifugal potential SS111
– completeness of energy eigenstates BM151
– Hamilton operator 30, BM131, 135, SS49, 171
– Heisenberg equation BM137, 138, SS49
– orthonormal states BM153
– probability flux 173
– Schrödinger equation BM135, 150, SS49, 50
– spread in momentum BM138, SS54–58
– spread in position BM138–141, SS53–58
– time transformation function 30, BM135–137, SS49, 50, 66
– uncertainty ellipse SS56–58
–– constant area SS58
Fourier, Jean Baptiste Joseph 21, BM119, SS3
Fourier integration SS173
Fourier transformation BM119, SS2, 15, 16, 46
Fourier's theorem BM119
free particle *see* force-free motion
frequency
– circular ∼ BM158
– relative ∼ BM48
Frullani, Giuliano 170

g-factor 132
– anomalous ∼ 132
gauge function 169
Gauss, Karl Friedrich 80, BM124, SS50
Gauss's theorem 80
gaussian integral BM125, 146, 203, SS50
gaussian moment SS3
generating function
– Fock states SS83
– Hermite polynomials BM168, SS176
– Laguerre polynomials SS119
– Legendre polynomials SS122
– spherical harmonics SS124
generator 32–34, BM128, 130, SS92
– unitary transformation SS92, 129
Gerlach, Walther 115, BM9, 12, 193
Glauber, Roy Jay SS81
golden rule 48, 51
– applied to photon emission 53–54
– applied to scattering 87
Gordan, Paul Albert 122
gradient 81, BM11, SS98
– spherical coordinates SS109
Green, George 94, SS158
Green's function 94
– asymptotic form 96, 97
Green's operator 101
ground state BM143, 185
– degenerate ∼s 71
– harmonic oscillator BM172, SS75
– instantaneous ∼ 70
– square-well potential BM186
– two-electron atoms 151
ground-state energy SS131
– constant restoring force SS134
– delta potential BM187
– harmonic oscillator BM163
– lowest upper bound SS133
– Rayleigh–Ritz estimate SS132
– second-order correction SS141
gyromagnetic ratio *see* g-factor

half-transparent mirror BM2, 4

Hamilton, William Rowan 27, BM82, SS39, 42
Hamilton function BM129, SS39
– and energy SS39
Hamilton operator 27, BM82, 84, 86, 130, SS39
– and system energy SS39
– arbitrary ∼ BM131
– atom–photon interaction 53, 63
– bounded from below BM143, 154
– center-of-mass motion 140
– charge in magnetic field 125–127
– constant force 35, BM153, SS58
– driven two-level atom 64
– eigenbras SS86
– eigenstates BM149
– eigenvalues BM149
–– degeneracy 128, BM150
– electron in magnetic field 132
– equivalent ∼s BM85–86
– force-free motion 30, BM131, 135, SS49, 171
– harmonic oscillator BM158, 163, 164, SS66, 68, 72–74, 85
– hydrogenic atoms SS113
– matrix representation 68
– metrical dimension SS39
– photon 52, 63
– relative motion 140
– rotation 116
– spherical symmetry SS108
– three-level atom 72
– time-dependent ∼ 28, BM84, SS40
– time-dependent force SS62
– two electrons 139
– two-dimensional oscillator SS89, 106
– two-electron atoms 149
– two-level atom 52, 68
– typical form 80, BM132, 148, SS41, 155
–– virial theorem SS128
Hamilton's equation of motion 28, SS42, 43
hard-sphere potential 110, 174
– bound states 113
– impenetrable sphere 113
– low-energy scattering 112
harmonic oscillator BM158–172, SS66
– anharmonic perturbation SS141
– bases BM170
– eigenenergies BM162
– energy scale SS75
– ground state BM172, SS75
– ground-state energy BM163
– ground-state wave function BM164
– Hamilton operator BM158, 163, 164, SS66, 68, 72–74, 85
–– eigenkets SS76
–– eigenvalues SS76
– Heisenberg equation BM158, SS66, 71, 84
– ladder operators 52, 176, BM166, SS76, 174
– length scale BM159, SS73, 75
– momentum scale SS73, 75
– momentum spread BM172, SS174
– no-force limit SS70, 71
– position spread BM172, SS174
– Schrödinger equation BM158, SS68
– time transformation function SS67, 70, 84, 85, 88, 174
– two-dimensional isotropic ∼ *see* two-dimensional oscillator
– virial theorem SS129
– wave functions BM163, 165, 167–169
–– orthonormality BM169
– WKB approximation SS160, 180
Hartree, Douglas Rayner 159
Hartree–Fock equations 159
Hausdorff, Felix SS36
Heaviside, Oliver BM208, SS163
Heaviside's step function BM208, SS163
Heisenberg, Werner 19, 27, BM2, 84, 115, 123, SS31, 42, 172

Heisenberg commutator 19, 22, BM115, SS31, 38
– for vector components SS97
– invariance BM115
Heisenberg equation (*see also* Heisenberg's equation of motion) 27, BM84, SS42, 43, 74
– and Schrödinger equation SS171
– constant force 35, BM153, SS58
– force-free motion BM137, 138, SS49
– formal solution BM149
– general force BM148
– harmonic oscillator BM158, SS66, 71, 84
– solving the ∼s BM149
– special cases SS44
– Stern–Gerlach apparatus BM192
– time-dependent force SS62
Heisenberg picture 45
Heisenberg's
– equation of motion (*see also* Heisenberg equation) 27, BM2, SS42, 43
– formulation of quantum mechanics BM115
– uncertainty relation BM123
Heisenberg–Born commutator *see* Heisenberg commutator
helium 148, SS154
helium ion SS113
Hellmann, Hans 133, SS125
Hellmann–Feynman theorem 133, SS125–127, 140, 149, 179
Hermite, Charles 4, BM77, SS10, 176
Hermite polynomials BM162, 168–170
– differential equation BM162
– generating function BM168, SS176
– highest power BM162
– orthogonality BM169
– Rodrigues formula BM168
– symmetry BM162
hermitian conjugate *see* adjoint
hermitian operator 4, BM76–77, SS168
– eigenvalues 165, BM77
– reality property 165, SS168
Hilbert, David 2, BM78, SS11, 182
Hilbert space 2, BM78, SS11
Hilbert–Schmidt inner product BM78, SS182
Hund, Friedrich Hermann BM191
hydrogen atom (*see also* hydrogenic atoms) SS113
hydrogen ion 148, 154
hydrogenic atoms
– and two-dimensional oscillator SS115
– axis vector SS116
– Bohr energies SS125, 150
– Bohr shells SS125
– bound states SS116
– degeneracy SS116
– eigenstates SS115
– eigenvalues SS115
– Hamilton operator SS113
– Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector SS117
– mean distance SS127
– natural scales SS113
– radial wave functions SS121
–– orthonormality SS122
– scattering states SS116
– Schrödinger equation SS113
– total angular momentum 123
– virial theorem SS129
– wave functions SS121–124
– WKB approximation SS180

identity operator 3, BM37, SS13
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM171
– square of ∼ BM106
– square root of ∼ 65, 67
– trace BM53, 61
indeterminism *see* determinism, lack of ∼
indistinguishable particles 139
– kets and bras 141

– permutation invariance of observables 139
– scattering of ∼ 144–148
infinitesimal
– change of dynamics 30, 32
– changes of kets and bras 32
– endpoint variations BM128
– path variations BM130
– rotation BM87, SS99
– time intervals BM80
– time step SS39
– transformation SS92
– unitary transformation BM81
– variation SS69
– variations of an operator 36
inner product 2, BM35, SS5, 11
– Hilbert–Schmidt ∼ BM78, SS182
– of bras BM35, 77, SS12
– of columns BM35, SS5
– of kets BM35, 77, SS11
– of operators BM78, SS182
– of rows BM35, SS5
integrating factor BM154, SS60, 157
interaction picture 45, 65
interference 5, BM156
inverse, unique ∼ BM19

Jacobi, Carl Gustav Jacob BM84, SS100
Jacobi identity SS100
– for commutators BM84
– for vectors BM212
Jeffreys, Harold SS158

Kelvin, Lord ∼ *see* Thomson, William
Kennard, Earle Hesse BM123, SS172
Kepler, Johannes SS116
Kepler ellipse SS116
ket 1, BM31–34, SS9–15
– adjoint of a ∼ 1, BM34
– analog of column-type vector SS10
– bases for ∼s *see* bases, for kets
– basis ∼s BM35, 70
– column for ∼ BM96, 101
– eigen∼ BM42–46
– entangled ∼ BM60
– infinite column for ∼ BM170
– inner product of ∼s *see* inner product, of kets
– metrical dimension SS17
– normalization of ∼s BM35, 69
– orthogonality of ∼s BM35, 69
– orthonormal ∼s BM36
– phase arbitrariness SS28
– physical ∼ SS10, 12
– reference ∼ BM33
– row of ∼s BM36, 50
– tensor product of ∼s 144, BM59
ket-bra (*see also* operator) BM37, 38, SS21
– adjoint of a ∼ BM37
– tensor products of ∼s BM59
kinetic energy BM131, SS41, 105, 111
kinetic momentum BM130
Kirkwood, John Gamble SS169
Kirkwood operators SS169
Kramers, Hendrik Anthony SS158
Kronecker, Leopold 3, BM69, SS4
Kronecker's delta symbol *see* delta symbol

ladder operators BM166
– angular momentum 118, SS102
– commutation relation BM164, SS78
– differentiation with respect to ∼ SS78
– eigenbras SS79
– eigenkets SS77
– eigenvalues SS77
– harmonic oscillator 52, 176, BM166, SS76, 174
– lowering operator BM166
– normal ordering SS80, 174, 175
– orbital angular momentum SS102, 104
– raising operator BM166

– two-dimensional oscillator 129, SS93, 94
Lagrange, Joseph Louis de 157, BM127
Lagrange function BM128
Lagrange parameter 157
Lagrange's variational principle BM127
Laguerre, Edmond SS108
Laguerre polynomials SS119
– generating function SS119
– Rodrigues formula SS119
Lamb, Willis Eugene 58
Lamb shift 58
Langer, Rudolph Ernest SS162
Langer's replacement SS163
Laplace, Pierre Simon de 60, SS117
Laplace differential operator SS178
Laplace transform 60
– inverse ∼ 61
– of convolution integral 61
Laplace–Runge–Lenz vector SS117
Laplacian *see* Laplace differential operator
Larmor, Joseph BM90
Larmor precession BM90, 208
Legendre, Adrien Marie 106, SS122
Legendre function SS122
Legendre polynomials 106, SS122
– generating function SS122
– orthonormality 107
Lenz, Wilhelm SS117
light quanta BM2
Liouville, Joseph 29, SS44
Liouville's equation of motion SS44
Lippmann, Bernard Abram 46
Lippmann–Schwinger equation 77, 98, 101
– asymptotic form 98
– Born approximation 100
– exact solution 104
– iteration 46
– scattering operator 46
lithium ion 148, SS113
locality BM6, 7
Lord Kelvin *see* Thomson, William
Lord Nelson *see* Rutherford, Ernest
Lord Rayleigh *see* Strutt, John William
Lorentz, Hendrik Antoon 60, 125
Lorentz force 125
Lorentz profile 60

Maccone, Lorenzo BM205
Maccone–Pati uncertainty relation BM205
magnetic field BM19
– charge in ∼
–– circular motion 130–132
–– Hamilton operator 125–127
–– Lorentz force 127
–– probability current 177
–– velocity operator 125
– homogeneous ∼ 127, BM14, 27, 38, 39, 79, 90
– inhomogeneous ∼ BM9
– potential energy of magnetic moment in ∼ BM10
– vector potential 125
magnetic interaction energy 132, BM84, 98, 202
magnetic moment 115, BM10, 90
– force on ∼ BM11
– potential energy of ∼ in magnetic field BM10
– rotating ∼ 115
– torque on ∼ BM10
many-electron atoms
– binding energy 161
– outermost electrons 164
– size 163
matrices
– 2×2 ∼ BM15
– infinite ∼ BM170–171
– Pauli ∼ *see* Pauli matrices
– projection ∼ BM26
– square ∼ BM15
– transformation ∼ SS7
Maxwell, James Clerk BM1
Maxwell's equations BM2
mean value BM49, 111, SS19
measurement

– disturbs the system BM31
– equivalent ∼s BM80
– nonselective ∼ BM55–57
– result 2, BM48
– with many outcomes BM68–73
Mermin, Nathaniel David BM66
Mermin's table BM66
mesa function SS24
metrical dimension
– bra and ket 22, SS17
– Hamilton operator SS39
– Planck's constant SS18, 39
– wave function SS17
model BM191
momentum BM129
– canonical ∼ 126
– classical position-dependent ∼ SS156
– kinetic ∼ 126, BM130
momentum operator BM112–114, 130, SS21
– differentiation with respect to ∼ 22, BM207, SS31, 78, 98, 170
– expectation value BM119–120, SS55
– functions of ∼ BM117, SS21
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM171
– spread BM138, 172, SS54
– vector operator SS97
momentum state SS15
– completeness of ∼s BM115, SS15
– orthonormality of ∼s BM115, SS15
motion
– to the left 84, BM150, 180, SS156
– to the right 84, BM150, 180, SS156

Nelson, Lord ∼ *see* Rutherford, Ernest
Newton, Isaac 91, BM1, 158
Newton's equation of motion BM2, 128, 158
Newton's theorem 179
Noether, Emmy SS92
Noether's theorem SS92
normal ordering SS80, 174, 175
– binomial factor SS175
normalization BM27
– force-free states BM152
– state density 52
– statistical operator SS27
– wave function BM110, SS2, 3, 12

observables 1
– complementary ∼ 5, 11, 14, 26
– mutually exclusive ∼ 5
– undetermined ∼ 27
odd state (*see also* even state) BM153, 163, 178, 183, SS138
operator (*see also* ket-bra) 1, BM37
– adjoint of an ∼ BM37
– antinormal ordering SS81
– bases for ∼s *see* bases, for operators
– characteristic function SS170
– equal ∼ functions BM72
– evolution ∼ *see* evolution operator
– function of an ∼ 4, BM71, 72
–– unitary transformation of ∼∼ 18, BM201, SS34
–– varying a ∼∼ 36, 37, 169
– hermitian ∼ *see* hermitian operator
– identity ∼ *see* identity operator
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM170
– inner product of ∼s *see* inner product, of operators
– logarithm of an ∼ 170
– normal ∼ BM200, 201, SS182
– normal ordering SS80
– not normal ∼ BM201
– ordered ∼ function 12–14, 166, SS30–33
– Pauli ∼s *see* Pauli operators
– Pauli vector ∼ *see* Pauli vector operator
– projection ∼ *see* projector
– reaction ∼ *see* reaction operator
– scalar ∼ SS102

– scattering ∼ *see* scattering operator
– spectral decomposition 3, 4, BM72, 81, SS21
– spread BM120
– statistical ∼ *see* statistical operator
– unitary ∼ *see* unitary operator
– variance BM121
– vector ∼ SS102, 177
optical theorem 102, 175
orbital angular momentum 116, 117, SS95, 98
– commutators SS99–102
– eigenkets SS104
– eigenstates SS102
– eigenvalues SS95, 102, 104
– ladder operators SS102, 104
– vector operator SS98
–– cartesian components SS93, 98, 99
ordered exponential SS32
orthogonality 3, BM35
– of kets BM35, 69
orthohelium BM69
orthonormality 3, 20, 22, 24, BM69, 81, SS6
– angular-momentum states SS103
– azimuthal wave functions SS121
– Fock states BM169, SS175, 176
– force-free states BM153
– Legendre polynomials 107
– momentum states BM115, SS15
– position states BM106, SS12, 15
– radial wave functions SS121, 122
– spherical harmonics SS122
– time dependence SS38
overidealization BM109, SS10

partial waves
– for incoming plane wave 107
– for scattering amplitude 109
– for total wave 108
particle
– identical ∼s *see* indistinguishable particles
– indistinguishable ∼s *see* indistinguishable particles
Pati, Arun Kumar BM205
Pauli, Wolfgang 115, 142, BM40, SS105
Pauli matrices 177, BM38–40
Pauli operators BM38–40, 47
– functions of ∼ BM40–41
– nonstandard matrices for ∼ BM197, 198
– standard matrices for ∼ BM40, 198
– trace of ∼ BM53
– uncertainty relation BM206
Pauli vector operator 115, BM40, 52, SS105
– algebraic properties BM40
– commutator of components BM88
– component of ∼ BM44
Peierls, Rudolf Ernst 104
permutation
– cyclic ∼ 7, 16
persistence probability 49
perturbation theory 37, BM149
– Brillouin–Wigner *see* Brillouin–Wigner perturbation theory
– for degenerate states SS148–155
– Rayleigh–Schrödinger *see* Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory
phase factor BM28, SS61
phase shift BM178
phase space SS56
phase-space function SS30, 33
phase-space integral SS32, 33, 164
photoelectric effect BM46
photon BM2
– Hamilton operator 52, 63
photon emission 52–62
– golden rule 53–54
– probability of no ∼ 59
– Weisskopf–Wigner method 54–60
photon mode 54, 55
photon-pair source BM4
Placzek, George 104

Planck, Max Karl Ernst Ludwig 19, BM82, SS3
Planck's constant 19, BM82, SS3
– metrical dimension SS18, 39
Poisson, Siméon Denis 23
Poisson identity 23
polar angle SS109
polar coordinates SS105
polarizability SS155
position operator BM110–112, SS20
– delta function of ∼ BM174
– differentiation with respect to ∼ 22, BM148, SS31, 78, 98, 170
– expectation value BM111, SS55
– functions of ∼ BM111, SS20
– infinite matrix for ∼ BM171
– spread BM138, 172, SS54
– vector operator SS97
position state SS15
– completeness of ∼s BM106, SS15
– orthonormality of ∼s BM106, SS12, 15
position–momentum correlation SS55, 59, 172
potential energy SS41, 109
– effective ∼ 158, SS111
– localized ∼ 82, 86
– separable ∼ 87, 173
potential well BM174
power series method BM159–162
prediction *see* statistical prediction
principal quantum number SS115
principal value 58
– model for ∼ 62
probabilistic laws BM4
probabilistic prediction *see* statistical prediction
probability 2, 79, BM20–29, SS1, 13
– amplitude 2, BM20–29, 33, 34, 36, 105, SS2, 13
–– column of ∼s BM92, 94
–– time dependent ∼∼ BM90–94, 102
– as expectation value BM49, SS24
– conditional ∼ BM65, SS2
– continuity equation 80, 172
– current density 79, 81, 99
–– charge in magnetic field 177
– density 79, BM110, SS1
– flux of ∼ 79
– for reflection BM181, 188, 190
– for transmission BM181, 188, 190
– fundamental symmetry 2, BM73, SS13
– local conservation law 80
– of no change BM141–148
–– long times BM142
–– short times BM142, 143
– transition ∼ *see* transition probability
probability operator *see* statistical operator
product rule
– adjoint SS18
– commutator BM84, SS31, 186
– transposition SS5
– variation 181
projection BM26
– matrices BM26
– operator *see* projector
projector 8, 10, BM26, 41, 47, 110, 111, SS182
– on atomic state 52
– to an x state BM174
property, objective ∼ BM13, 60

quantum action principle 32–39
quantum state estimation BM65
qubit BM68

Rabi, Isidor Isaac 53
Rabi frequency 53, 54, 66
– modified ∼ 67, 78
– time dependent ∼ 63, 71
radial density SS122
radial quantum number SS107
radial Schrödinger equation 106, SS111
Rayleigh, Lord ∼ *see* Strutt, John William
Rayleigh–Ritz method 151, 157, SS131–138

– best scale SS134
– excited states SS137–138
– scale-invariant version SS136
– trial wave function SS132
Rayleigh–Schrödinger perturbation theory SS138–143, 146, 148
reaction operator 170
reflection
– above barrier ∼ BM208
– symmetry BM150
relative frequency BM48
relative motion
– Hamilton operator 140
– momentum operator 140
– position operator 140
residue 96, BM177
Riemann, Georg Friedrich Bernhard 21
Ritz, Walther SS132
Robertson, Howard Percy BM122
Robertson's uncertainty relation BM122, 204
Rodrigues, Benjamin Olinde BM168, SS119
Rodrigues formula
– Hermite polynomials BM168
– Laguerre polynomials SS119
Rohrer, Heinrich BM191
rotation 25, SS8, 90
– consecutive ∼s SS100–101
– Hamilton operator 116
– internal ∼ 116
– orbital ∼ 116
– rigid ∼ 116
– unitary operator SS93, 99
row BM25
– eigen∼ BM96
– for bra BM96, 101
– of coordinates SS4
– of kets BM36, 50
row-type vector SS4
– analog of bra SS10
Runge, Carl David Tolmé SS117
Rutherford, Ernest (Lord Nelson) 91
Rutherford cross section 91
Ry *see* Rydberg constant
Rydberg, Janne 150, SS114
Rydberg constant 150, SS114

s-wave scattering 110–114
– delta-shell potential 176
– hard-sphere potential 112
scalar product (*see also* inner product) SS5
scaling transformation SS130
– and virial theorem SS130
scattering 82–114, BM181
– Born series 102
– by localized potential 86
– cross section
–– Coulomb potential 91
–– golden-rule approximation 89
–– Rutherford ∼∼ 91
–– separable potential 173
–– Yukawa potential 91
– deflection angle 90, 106, 175
– elastic ∼ 88
– elastic potential ∼ 89
– electron-electron ∼ 144–147
– forward ∼ 102
– golden rule 87
– in and out states 92
– incoming flux 88
– inelastic ∼ 88
– interaction region 86, 97
– low-energy ∼ *see* *s*-wave scattering
– of *s*-waves *see* *s*-wave scattering
– of indistinguishable particles 144–148
– right-angle ∼ 146
– separable potential 104
– spherically symmetry potential 89
– transition matrix element 89
– transition operator 100–175
–– separable potential 105
scattering amplitude 98
– and scattering cross section 100
– and scattering phases 109
– and transition operator 101
– partial waves 109

scattering cross section 88
– and scattering amplitude 100
– and scattering phases 110
scattering matrix 86
scattering operator 44, 76
– Born series 45
– equation of motion 76
– integral equation 45
– Lippmann–Schwinger equation 46
scattering phase 109
scattering states BM181
– delta potential BM178–181
– hydrogenic atoms SS116
– square-well potential BM187–191
Schmidt, Erhard BM78, SS182
Schrödinger, Erwin 25, 27, BM2, 60, 83, 114, 117, 159, SS1, 40, 138, 172
Schrödinger equation (*see also* Schrödinger's equation of motion) 27, BM2, 83, SS40, 43
– and Heisenberg equation SS171
– driven two-level atom 64, 65
– evolution operator 75
– for bras 27, BM83, SS40
– for column of amplitudes BM94
– for kets 27, BM83, SS40
– for momentum wave function BM131, 133
– for position wave function BM131, 132, SS41
– force-free motion BM135, SS49, 50
– formal solution SS86
– harmonic oscillator SS68
– initial condition BM131
– radial ∼ *see* radial Schrödinger equation
– solving the ∼ SS45
– time independent ∼ 83, BM96, 100, SS156
–– constant force BM153, 154
–– delta potential BM175, 178
–– force-free motion BM150
–– harmonic oscillator BM158
–– hydrogenic atoms SS113
–– spherical coordinates SS110
–– square-well potential BM187
–– two-dimensional oscillator SS106, 115
– time transformation function SS45, 46
– two-level atom 55
Schrödinger picture 45
Schrödinger's
– equation of motion (*see also* Schrödinger equation) 27, BM83, SS40
– formulation of quantum mechanics BM114
– uncertainty relation BM204, SS172
Schur, Issai 167
Schur's lemma 167
Schwarz, Hermann SS13
Schwinger, Julian 15, 33, 46, 162, 177, SS81
Schwinger representation 176
Schwinger's quantum action principle 32–39
Scott, John Moffett Cuthbert 162
Scott correction 162
Segal, Irving Ezra SS81
selection BM13
– successive ∼s BM13, 17
selector BM13, 16
selfadjoint *see* hermitian
SG *acronym* Stern–Gerlach
short-range force BM174
sign function BM173, SS169
– and step function SS182
silver atom 115, BM9, 10, 48, 57, 87, 97, 202, 206
single-photon counter BM3
singlet 123, 143, 146
– projector on ∼ 179
Slater, John Clarke 144
Slater determinant 144, 159
solid angle 87
solid harmonics SS123
spectral decomposition 3, 13, 21, BM72, 81, SS21
speed 126

speed of light 125
spherical Bessel functions 107
– asymptotic form 107
spherical coordinates 89, 94, BM44, SS108, 109
– gradient SS109
– local unit vectors SS109
– position vector SS109
– Schrödinger equation SS110
spherical harmonics 106, SS122
– differential equation SS123
– examples SS123
– generating function SS124
– orthonormality SS122
– symmetry SS123
spherical wave
– incoming ∼ 108, 109
– interferes with plane wave 102
– outgoing ∼ 98, 99, 108
spin 117, BM10, SS105
spin–orbit coupling 137
spin–statistics theorem 142
spread BM120
– and variance BM121
– geometrical significance BM145
– in energy BM144, 146
– in momentum BM138, SS54
– in position BM138, SS54
– vanishing ∼ BM145
spreading of the wave function 183, BM139, 141, SS54, 56
square-well potential BM182–191
– above-barrier reflection BM208
– attractive ∼ BM187
– bound states BM182–186
– count of bound states SS180
– ground state BM186
– reflection probability BM188, 190
– repulsive ∼ BM187
– scattering states BM187–191
– Schrödinger equation BM187
– transmission probability BM188, 190
– tunneling BM187–191
Stark, Johannes 137, SS153
Stark effect
– linear ∼ SS153
– quadratic ∼ SS154
state (*see also* statistical operator) BM52
– bound ∼s *see* bound states
– coherent ∼s *see* coherent states
– entangled ∼ *see* entangled state
– even ∼ *see* even state
– Fock ∼s *see* Fock states
– mixed ∼ SS27, 29
– odd ∼ *see* odd state
– of minimum uncertainty BM123–126
– of the system BM1, 2, SS3
– pure ∼ SS28, 29
– reduction BM64–65
–– is a mental process BM65
– scattering ∼s *see* scattering states
– vector BM33
state density 51
– normalization 52
state of affairs BM1, SS3, 9, 23
state operator *see* statistical operator
stationary phase BM156
statistical operator 26, BM121, SS23, 26
– blend BM55, SS27
–– as-if reality BM55, SS27
– Born rule BM51–55
– for atom pairs BM58, 61
– inferred from data SS26
– mixture BM55, SS27
–– many blends for one ∼ BM55, SS27
– nature of the ∼ BM65
– normalization SS27
– positivity SS27
– represents information BM56, 65, SS26
– time dependence 28, BM86, SS44
– time-dependent force SS173
statistical prediction BM4, 8, 65, SS2, 26
– verification of a ∼ BM22, SS2
step function BM208, SS163

– and sign function SS182
Stern, Otto 115, BM9, 12, 193
Stern–Gerlach
– apparatus BM47, 48, 69, 195, 196
–– entangles BM193
–– equations of motion BM192
–– generalization BM69
– experiment BM9–12, 27, 46, 191–193, 206
–– displacement BM193
–– Larmor precession BM208
–– momentum transfer BM193
– magnet 115, BM10, 12, 196
– measurement BM21, 23, 27, 32, 147
– successive ∼ measurements BM12–15
Stirling, James BM161
Stirling's approximation BM161
Strutt, John William (Lord Rayleigh) SS124, 132, 138
surface element 79
swindle 50
symmetry
– and degeneracy BM150, SS90, 116
– reflection ∼ BM150

Taylor, Brook BM112
Taylor expansion BM156
Taylor's theorem BM112
tensor product BM59–60
– and brackets BM59
– of bras BM59
– of identities BM61
– of ket-bras BM59
– of kets 119, 144, BM59
Thomas, Llewellyn Hilleth 162
Thomas–Fermi energy 162
Thomson, William (Lord Kelvin) SS122
three-level atom 71
– Hamilton operator 72
time dependence
– dynamical ∼ 28, BM84, SS43, 44, 88
– parametric ∼ 28, BM84, SS40, 43, 44, 88
time ordering 46
– exponential function 47
time transformation function 29, BM133–134, SS45–47, 87
– as a Fourier sum SS88
– constant force 36, SS61, 173
– dependence on labels SS51
– force-free motion 30, BM135–137, SS49, 50, 66
– harmonic oscillator SS67, 70, 84, 85, 88, 174
– initial condition BM134, 206, SS45, 46
– Schrödinger equation SS45, 46
– time-dependent force SS63–66
– turning one into another BM134, SS46
time-dependent force
– Hamilton operator SS62
– Heisenberg equation SS62
– spread in momentum SS63
– spread in position SS63
– statistical operator SS173
– time transformation function SS63–66
Tom and Jerry BM57–65
torque on magnetic moment BM10
trace 14, BM49–51, SS22
– as diagonal sum BM50
– as sum of eigenvalues 68, BM198
– cyclic property BM51, SS25
– linearity BM50, SS23
– of ordered operator SS32
– of Pauli operators BM53
– of the identity operator BM53, 61
transformation function 22, BM116, 118, SS16
– time ∼ *see* time transformation function
transition 47, 48
– frequency 49, BM97, 103
– operator (*see also* scattering, transition operator) 52, 100
– probability 48, 49, 51

– rate 49, 51, 54, 87
translation
– unitary operator SS93
transposition SS4, 10
– of a product SS5
trial wave function SS132
triplet 123, 143, 146
– projector on ∼ 179
tunnel diode BM191
tunnel effect BM191
tunnel transistor BM191
tunneling microscope BM191
tunneling probability BM191
two-dimensional oscillator 129, SS89–95
– and hydrogenic atoms SS115
– degeneracy SS90
– eigenstates SS90, 93–95, 106
– Fock states SS94
– Hamilton operator SS89, 106
– ladder operators 129, SS93, 94
– radial wave functions SS121
–– orthonormality SS121
– rotational symmetry SS90
– Schrödinger equation SS106, 115
– wave functions SS117–121
two-electron atoms 148–158
– binding energy 154
– direct energy 155
– exchange energy 155
– ground state 151
– Hamilton operator 149
– interaction energy 152
– single-particle energy 152
two-level atom
– adiabatic evolution 68–71
– driven ∼ 62–71
–– Hamilton operator 64
–– Schrödinger equation 64, 65
– frequency shift 58, 62
– Hamilton operator 52, 68
– instantaneous eigenstate 71
– periodic drive 66
– projector on atomic state 52
– resonant drive 65
– Schrödinger equation 55
– transition operator 52
– transition rate 54, 58, 62

unbiased bases 6
uncertainty ellipse SS56–58
– area SS57, 173
uncertainty principle BM123
uncertainty relation BM120–123, 204, 205
– for Pauli operators BM206
– Heisenberg's ∼ BM123
–– and Kennard BM123
–– and Schrödinger SS172
–– more stringent form SS172
– of the Maccone–Pati kind BM205
– physical content BM123
– Robertson's ∼ BM122, 204
– Schrödinger's ∼ BM204
uncertainty, state of minimum ∼ BM123–126, 206
unit
– atomic-scale ∼s BM82
– macroscopic ∼s BM82
unit matrix BM26
unit vector BM44
unitary operator 4, BM73–77, SS19, 168
– eigenvalues 165, BM76
– for cyclic permutations 7
– for shifts 24
– maps bases BM75
– period 7
– rotation SS93, 99
– transforms operator function 18, BM201, SS34
– translation SS93
unitary transformation SS38, 92
– generator SS92, 129
uphill motion BM155

variance (*see also* spread) BM121, 138, 145
– geometrical significance BM145
vector BM32
– coordinates of a ∼ BM32
– state ∼ BM33

vector potential
– asymmetric choice 128
– symmetric choice 128
vector space SS9
velocity 80, 125, BM138
– commutation relation 126
virial theorem SS128, 130
– and scaling transformation SS130
– harmonic oscillator SS129
– hydrogenic atoms SS129
von Neumann, John 29, BM86, SS44
von Neumann equation 29, BM86

wave function BM105, SS1
– its sole role SS2
– momentum ∼ BM118, SS2
–– metrical dimension SS17
– normalization BM110, SS2, 3, 12
– position ∼ BM118, SS2
–– metrical dimension SS17
– spreading *see* spreading of the wave function
– trial ∼ SS132
wave train BM123
wave–particle duality BM46
Weisskopf, Victor Frederick 54
Wentzel, Gregor SS158
Wentzel–Kramers–Brillouin *see* WKB
Weyl, Claus Hugo Hermann 12, 15, 166, SS34
Weyl commutator 12, SS34
Weyl's operator basis 166, 181
Wigner, Eugene Paul 54, 134, SS143
Wigner–Eckart theorem 134
WKB *acronym* Wentzel–Kramers–Brillouin
WKB approximation SS155–165
– harmonic oscillator SS160, 180
– hydrogenic atoms SS180
– reliability criterion SS159
WKB quantization rule SS160, 161, 165
– in three dimensions SS162
– Langer's replacement SS163

Yukawa, Hideki 90
Yukawa potential 90
– double ∼ 174
– scattering cross section 91

Zeeman, Pieter 137
Zeeman effect 137
Zeilinger, Anton BM63
Zeno effect BM29–31, 148
Zeno of Elea BM31